

## Advanced I

For those that have mastered the material of both Beginner's and Intermediate IMABI, Advanced I is the next step. You are by now able to easily comprehend the grammar and hopefully most of the vocabulary that you see in a publication. Advanced IMABI begins to add on more advanced grammar concepts as well as interesting topics.

### 上級じょうきゅう I: Advanced I

[第201課: The Bases \(活用形\)](#)

[第202課: 連用形 → Noun](#)

[第203課: 連用中止形](#)

[第204課: Tense I: The Auxiliary Verb -TA](#)

[第205課: Tense II: The Morpheme -RU/U](#)

[第206課: ては](#)

[第207課: The Particle のみ](#)

[第208課: The Particleこそ](#)

[第209課: わけだ](#)

[第210課: わけではない, わけがない, & わけにはいかない](#)

[第211課: The Particle ながらII: ながら \(も\) & ながらに \(して\)](#)

[第212課: No Doubt that: ～に違いない & ～に相違ない](#)

[第213課: Based on: ～に基づいて, ～を踏まえて, ～をもとにして, ～に沿って, ～に即して, & ～に則って](#)

[第214課: After II: ～てからというもの \(は\) & ～て以来](#)

[第215課: Circumstance: 場合 & ～に備えて](#)

[第216課: Whenever II: ～度, ～都度, & ～につけ](#)

[第217課: The Supplementary Verb する](#)

[第218課: ～に対して](#)

[第219課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 1](#)

[第220課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 2](#)

[第221課: Standpoint: ～として & ～にとって](#)

第222課: Through: ～を通して & ～を通じて

第223課: Span: ～にかけて & ～にわたって

第224課: ～によって

第225課: ～ざるを得ない & ～やむを得ない

第226課: The Causative II: Transitive Verb Corruption

第227課: Intransitive Verbs Translated in the Passive Voice

第228課: 自受動詞

第229課: 他受動詞

第230課: The Particle さえ, すら, & だに

第231課: ～において・における

第232課: More Negative Patterns: ～ないことには, ～なし・なき, ～なしで (は), ～なしに (は), ～なくして (は), ～ことなく, いとわない, & 甲斐もなく

第233課: Exception: ～をのぞいて, ～をおいて, & ～ならでは

第234課: Can't Help I: ～ないではいられない

第235課: Can't Help II: ～てならない, ～てあまない, ～てしかたがない, ～にたえない, & ～にたまらない

第236課: Can't Help III: ～ないではすまない, ～ないではおかない, ～を余儀なく[される・させる], & ～を禁じ得ない

第237課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 3

第238課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 4

第239課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 5 (Sino-Japanese)

第240課: Limit: ～限り, ～を限りに, ～限りでは, ～に限って, ～に限らない, & ～とは限らない

第241課: Addition: ～に加えて, ～にとどまらず, ～もさることながら, ～はおろか・もちろん・もとより, & ～ともあれ

第242課: The Particle と III: と+…ない

第243課: The Volitional II: The Negative Volitional: ～まい

第244課: As soon as: ～や (いなや), ～なり, ～途端 (に), & ～次第

第245課: Combination Particles with ところ

## 第246課: 以 Adverbial Nouns

## 第247課: Circumstance: まま, 思いきや, & もと

## 第248課: Result: ～結果, ～うえで, ～挙句, ～すえに, & ～始末だ

## 第249課: Compare & Contrast: ～に比べて, ～に引き換え, ～にもまして, & ～ないまでも

## 第250課: As (change): ～につれて, ～に従って, ～に伴って, ～とともに, ～に応じて, & ～に応じて

## 第201課: The Bases(活用形)

Japanese is an agglutinative language (膠着語こうちゃくご). Agglutination in the case of Japanese refers to how endings attach to what are referred to as "bases" in chains, interwoven like DNA strands. Endings can range from auxiliaries, supplementary verbs, to even particles, but the bases they attach to are limited in number and the relationship between base and ending is not arbitrary.

## Parts of Speech

It's important to understand that the bases will differ in appearance and slightly in usage depending on the part of speech. The parts of speech that have bases are those that can conjugate. Thus, we will be investigating verbs, adjectives, and auxiliaries. In this lesson, we consider タル形容動詞 as a separate part of speech as their set of bases is a special point of interest.

	未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
上一段活用動詞	い-	い-	いる	いる-	いれ-	いろ・いよ
下一段活用動詞	え-	え-	える	える-	えれ-	えろ・えよ
五段活用動詞	-あ・-お-	-い-	-う	-う-	-え-	-え
サ変活用動詞	さ・し・せ-	し-	する	する-	すれ-	しろ・せよ・せい
カ変活用動詞	こ-	き-	くる	くる	くれ-	こい
形容詞	かろ-	く・かり-	い	い・(き-)	けれ-	かれ
形容動詞	だろ-	だっ・で・に-	だ	な-	なら-	X
タル形容動詞	(たら-)	と-	(たり)	たる-	(たれ-)	(たれ)
～た	たろ-	たり	た	た	たら-	X
～ず	ざら-	ず・ざり-	ず・ぬ・ん	ぬ・ざる-	ね・ざれ-	ざれ

～べきだ	べから-	べく・べかり-	べし・べきだ	べき-・べかる	べけれ-	X
～ます	ませ-・ましょ-	まし-	ます	ます(る)	ますれ-	ませ
～なり	なら-	なり-	なり	なる-	なれ-	なれ
～う・よう	X	X	う・よう	(う・よう-)	X	X
～まい	X	X	まい	(まい・まじき)	X	X

This is a lot of information condensed into one chart, so during the lesson individual examples from this chart will be discussed.

## 未然形

The 未然形 literally translates into English as the "Irrealis Form". This comes from the Classical Japanese usage of making the ば hypothetical, which attached to the 未然形 for this meaning. So, you would get something like 急がば instead of 急げば. In fact, there are still several instances in Modern Japanese where this is allowed. For instance, 急がば is seen in the common set phrase 急がば回れ, which translates to "slow and steady wins the race".

Remember that set phrases in any language are the most likely examples to find old-fashioned/archaic grammar. Yet, this example isn't the only example. In fact, whenever you use ～たらば or ～ならば, you are utilizing the 未然形+ば.

The use of ～たら and ～なら in this fashion should be ungrammatical because as the chart above shows, they are the 未然形 of ～た and ～なり respectively. So, they should have an ending following them. As we should all know, though, languages evolve from errors. Now, they are deemed as particles because they have deviated from the rules.

---

## Examples

1. 星になれたならば  
If you were able to become a star
2. できたら、見せてくれない？  
If you were able to, can't you show me?

As this is the base of things not having realized, it is also followed by auxiliaries of intention/volition. For the volition, many items have a 未然形 sound change of /a/ to /o/.

3. 行こう！  
Let's go!

- 4a. そうでもな**か**ろう。(ちょっと古風)  
4b. そうでもない**で**しょう。(もっと自然)  
It's probably not so.
- 

### する

する's original 未然形's was せ-. As it is the original, you should expect it to be used with old auxiliaries such as はず・ぬ・ん. These are all forms of each other, so this makes it easier to remember. Other endings that have attached to the 未然形 in Classical Japanese have all been replaced with other speech modals or changed somehow (like the volitional endings and their current relationship sound-wise with the 未然形).

5. 入会**せ**ずにはいられない。  
I can't help but join.  
6. 勉強**せ**んと。(ちょっと古風: 方言的)  
I have to study.

The さ- variant in Modern Japanese is important for the forms される (passive) and させる (causative). However, in Classical Japanese you had せらる and せしむ respectively. So, the emergence of さ- comes about due the causative auxiliary さす. Essentially, the birth of させる was simultaneous with that of される. し- is paired with ない and the volitional ending しよう.

7. 誘惑された人  
A person that got lured  
8. 喧嘩を売られたのはこっちのほうだ。  
The one who had been picked into the fight was [him].  
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.  
9. いや、そうさせはしないのだ。  
No, [I] won't make [you] do such.
- 

The 未然形 of 五段 verbs, 形容詞, 形容動詞, and some auxiliaries ends in /o-/.

10. 新しかろうが古かろうが  
Whether it's new or old  
11. 今夜勉強**し**ないでしょう。  
I probably won't study tonight.  
12. 息子にも理屈は**あ**ろう。(ちょっと古風)  
His son must also have a reason.  
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.
- 

### Adjective 未然形 + Negation

Though the 未然形 of adjectives has limited usage with the auxiliary ～う, which is also replaced with 終止形+だろう, the old negative auxiliary ～ず attaches to the 未然形 of adjectives. Though this would mean any instances of this combination in Modern Japanese are old-fashioned, you will come across examples in literature.

13. いささか詩人らしからぬ月並みな表現である。

It's a commonplace expression unbecoming of a poet.

---

### **Potential Verbs**

Before Modern Japanese, there were no special conjugations for the potential such as 行ける for 行く. This came about from a very important sound change involving the auxiliary ～れる when attached to the 未然形 of 五段 verbs.

Motivation for this lies in the fact that ～れる is primarily used to make the passive voice for 五段 and サ変 verbs. It also has another major function of making light 敬語, which is crucially important for situations such as talking to one's boss's boss or elderly people.

14. どちらに行かれますか。

Where are you going?

15. シャコはカモメに食われた。

The mantis shrimp was eaten by the sea gull.

How, then, did a whole new "conjugation" form? In Classical Japanese, Japanese actually didn't express "affirmative potential". Japanese culture has always placed value in being humble in regards to oneself. So, the means of expressing potential were used when expressing negative potential. The auxiliaries ～られる and れる were ～らる and ～る respectively. So, cannot swim would have been expressed as 泳がれず.

16. つゆまどろまれず。

I couldn't doze even a little.

From the 更級日記.

The 未然形 ～る was れ-, which is still the 未然形 of ～れる. Sometime during the Edo Period, "ar" in this potential pattern dropped. This renders 泳がれず as 泳げず. Though the changes in appearance of the negative and potential endings are separate events, this simple change that no doubt began as a colloquial contraction gave birth to fully independent potential verbs in the Japanese language.

Due to Western influence with many works being translated into Japanese, the 終止形 (final form) of the potential began being used, and with the large majority of verbs now having a fully functional independent form for the potential, it was perfect timing.

17. 手紙が書けず。

I can't write the letter.

In Modern Japanese, this is now being extended to 一段 verbs. So, things like 見られる is becoming 見れる. In another 50 years or so, this may be the fully standard way to make the potential for this verb class. This entire process, though, originates from just a simple adjustment to the rules of a conjugation involving the 未然形 because having the potential to do something doesn't mean you've done it yet.

18. 何でも食べれるよ。

You can eat anything.

19. 見れますか。

Can you see it?

Many people like to refer to this special development in these verbs as the 可能形. After all, it's far more deviant than the 連用形 sound changes with ～た・て.

聞く → 聞き- (連用形) + ～て → 聞きて → (Drop K) 聞いて      Still using the 連用形

聞く → 聞か- (未然形) + ～れる → 聞かれる → (Drop ar) 聞ける      Still using the 未然形

However, this doesn't work well with the base format as seen above. Bases apply to anything that conjugates. There is no doubt that the term 可能形 refers to this potential form phenomenon, but is it of the same vein as the 未然形, 連用形, etc.? No. If it were, everything that conjugates in the language would at least have the opportunity to have it.

Again, this is only a particular sound change of a process following the norm for a particular verb class. Furthermore, these resultant "potential verbs" have their own set of bases like any other verb. So, it is generally believed that these verbs should be treated as separate words that stem from the base verb, just as there are transitivity pairs in the language.

Transitivity pairs didn't exist in ancient forms of Japanese. So, the emerging of a new derivative of verbs should not be surprising in a historical sense. If anything, this has allowed the language to fix a major problem in battling ambiguity with other usages of the auxiliary ～れる.

はじむ (Old Japanese word for "to begin") → Modern Japanese: はじ  
まる (Intransitive)      はじめる (Transitive)

いづ (Old Japanese word for "to go out") → Modern  
Japanse: 出る (Intransitive)  
出す (Transitive)  
出せる (Potential)

There is a mistaken logic in Japanese texts that the 可能形 is made by affixing (attaching) る to the equivalent of the 已然形, which is what is meant by sources that call it the "E Base" because of the vowel that it ends with for all instances. However, this is nonsensical. It may be an easy way to remember how to make it for 五段 verbs. But, it completely neglects what the "E Base ≡ 已然形" is used for. It also ignores the sound change. The non-abbreviated form of the process 未然形+れる still has relevance in Modern Japanese. So, the downside that such an explanation brings is the watering down and unintended omission of important information to the student.

## 連用形

The purpose of the 連用形 is to show that an action/process is either taking place or has already taken place. Thus, it is often followed by auxiliaries such as 〜た. Conjunctive particles such as て, つつ, and ながら also follow it to indicate continuation. This is by far the most used base in Japanese conjugation. Further important usages include the 連用中止形 and making compound verbs.

20. 食卓に焔炉を置いて鍋を囲み、楽しく語らいながら食事ができる。  
You can have a dinner while enjoying eating and talking sitting around the pot on the konro [stove] on the dining table.

This sentence has several usages of the 連用形. You see it with て and the verb 置く, in the 連用中止形 with the verb 囲む, used as an adverb with the adjective 楽しい, and with the ながら with the verb 語る.

One of the most difficult aspects of the 連用形 are sound changes and multiple ones for certain items. A lot has changed in regards to the base. Consider the chart below which shows how it has changed. 文語 stands for Classical Japanese and 口語 stands for Modern Japanese.

文語					口語		
品詞	活用の種類	例語	語形		活用の種類	例語	語形
動詞	四段活用	書く	かき	-i	五段活用	書く	かき かい っ/ん/ い
	ラ行変格活用	あり	あり	-i			
	ナ行変格活用	死ぬ	しに	-i			
	下一段活用	蹴る	け	-e			
	下二段活用	受く	うけ	-e	下一段活用	受ける	うけ -e



上一段活用	着る	き	-i	上一段活用	起きる	おき	-i
上二段活用	起く	おき	-i				
カ行変格活用	来	き	-i	カ行変格活用	来る	き	-i
サ行変格活用	す	し	-i	サ行変格活用	する	し	-i

ク活用      なし      なく  
                         なかり      かり

形容詞

ない      なく  
                 なかつ      かつ

シク活用      美し      うつくしく      しく  
                         うつくしか      しか  
                          り       り

形容動詞

ナリ活用      静かな      しずかに      に  
                          り      しずかなり       なり

静か      しずかに      に  
だ      しずか      だっ  
          だ       で

タリ活用      堂々た      どうどうと      と  
                          り      どうどうた       たり  
                               り       り

The different 連用形 are used with different endings. This should already be evident. For instance, the conjunctive particle て goes after く for 形容詞, に for 形容動詞 (which normally contracts to で), and the sound changes with 五段 verbs.

買う → 買って      書く → 書いて      嗅ぐ → 嗅いで      勝つ → 勝って      噛む → 噛んで      刈る → 刈って

## 終止形

This base marks the end of a sentence. This is very important. Everything that conjugates has a 終止形. It normally expresses the non-past tense unless

there is a tense item involved. What it looks like is quite straightforward as it is equivalent to the 辞書形.

21. 左に曲がる。(左に曲がれという意味)  
Turn left.

**Grammar Note:** Some times, the 終止形 in context may be used to instruct someone to do something.

Recently in the history of Japanese, the 連体形 merged with the 終止形, causing the latter to look like the former for many things. For instance, the 終止形 of する used to be す, and the 連体形 was する. This also effected some auxiliaries. For instance, べし → べきだ, ず → ぬ.

## 連体形

Though in Modern Japanese completely identical in appearance to the 終止形 for most conjugatable items, it is syntactically extremely different. The 連体形 is the attributive form, which is used in Modern Japanese to solely modify nominal phrases.

22. きれいな字  
Pretty handwriting

23. ずいぶんひどい内容  
Quite horrible content/matter

24. もう宿題を出したんです。  
I've already turned in my homework.

An issue that comes up a lot is students not realizing that verb phrases can modify sentences. There are even particle restrictions that come along with it. For instance, an embedded clause must never have the topic particle は unless there is a citation particle like と・って. Some make the mistake of finding the first が and assuming it's the subject, despite the fact that that is not always the case because of this fact.

25.

要旨ようしは、[謙一けんいちが長い間専務理事の椅子いすに坐すわって学園の管理を壟断ろうだんしている]こと、[会計に不正がある]こと、[それを理事会の席で大島に指摘されて謙一が狼狽ろうばいした]こと、つづいて[彼が次の理事長の椅子を狙ねらい画策かくさくしている]ことなどであった。

The gist was that Ken'ichi has been sitting in the seat of the executive director for a long time and has been monopolizing on the management of the academy, has made a wrong in the accounting, and that that was pointed out in the board meeting by Ohshima and Ken'ichi was bewildered, and counting on, he was scheming for the seat of the next board chairman.  
From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

**Sentence Note:** The brackets indicate the long attributes phrases, and the 連体形 have been put in bold.

## 已然形

The 已然形 literally means "the already-realized form". This comes from the fact that in Classical Japanese, the particle ば would be used with it to mean "because; when". Thus, this grammar point has changed significantly. It is also used with the particle ど(も), which means although.

26. あかつきより雨降れば

Since it had been raining since early morning  
From the 土佐日記.

27. エリスは床そこに臥ふすほどにはあらねど、小さき鉄炉てつろのほとりに椅子さし寄せて言葉少なし。

Ellis wasn't to the point of being bedridden, but she lied on a chair near a small iron furnace and had little to say.

By 鷗外おうがい.

You also see it used in the pattern こそすれ. In Modern Japanese grammar, it is sometimes called the 仮定形 (the hypothetical form) due to how the particle ば is now used. Nevertheless, the original name generally stands.

28. 男女の違いこそあれ、二人は瓜うり二つだね。

Of course they have their differences as man and woman, but they're like two peas in a pod.

## 命令形

The 命令形 is the imperative form, which creates a command. There are many ways to make commands in Japanese, but this is the core way to. It isn't difficult to make an imperative, but it is difficult to use these phrases--with the ultimate goal to request something--like native speakers would.

**Construction Note:** Making the 命令形 is relatively easy. As we have already studied how to construct it, please refer back to the chart at the beginning of this lesson.

**Curriculum Note:** As there is already a lesson about the 命令形, every point mentioned here is meant to be summarization and not intense dissection.

In Modern Japanese, the 命令形 is typically very stern and powerful. It is semantically impossible for it to be used with the past tense.

---

## Examples

29. こっちに来い！

Come here!

30. 手を挙げろ！

Hands up!

31. あんたのいいようにしてくれ。(Vulgar)

Do as is good for you.

32. ゴミを投げるな。

Don't throw trash!

33. 金を出せ！

Hand over money!

One can easily see a bank robber saying 金を出せ or a soldier yelling 手を挙げろ. It's not that stern commands are never used. It's just that from a productive standpoint, you should understand that its use is limited. Experience as to when the 命令形 is used is the best solution to not sound rude. There are plenty of other ways to get your point across about wanting something done.

34. 息子は、相手の家に謝りに行けという考えに反抗している。

His son was against his thought of going to apologize to his opponent's house.

From 混声の森 by 松本清張.

**Grammar Note:** In this instance, the command form is in quotations.

Though there is a 上下関係 between the father and son, the 命令形 is used in this fashion a lot.

35. 一生懸命勉強しろといわれた。

I was told to study as hard as possible.

---

### 話者 VS 聴者

In studying more about the 命令形, we need to examine the relation between the 話者 (speaker) and 聴者 (listener). Inequality signs will demonstrate which side has the most power/influence. An equal sign would mean that they're equal in this regard.

話者 > 聴者    話者 = 聴者    話者 < 聴者

In the first situation, the speaker has more authority on the choice of action than the listener. There is no place for the speaker to decide what to do. In the second situation, the speaker allows for the action, and the listener has the power to consent to it or not interfere with it. In the third section, even if the speaker makes a request for the listener to do something, the listener has the power to decide. Thus, the speaker ends up making a suggestion or some sort of advice/aspiration.

With each of these situations, you can replace the 命令形 with various synonymous expressions. For instance, in the first relation, you could see ～なければならぬ or ～なさい. In the second situation, you could use ～ていい.

In the third, ～た方がいい could be used instead. Though there are slight differences, relating the 命令形 with these patterns for the three broad situations it is used in will help you a lot in understanding it.

36. 黙って出されたものを食べろ。 (話者 > 聴者)  
食べろ → 食べなさい  
Shut up and eat what's been given to you!

37. これを飲め。 (話者 = 聴者)  
飲め → 飲んで (も) いい  
Drink this.

38. 一時間幸せになりたかったら酒を飲め, 三日間幸せになりたかったら結婚しろ, 一週間幸せになりたかったら豚を殺して食べろ, 一生幸せになりたかったら釣りを覚えろ。

命令形 → ～た方がいい

If you want to become happy for an hour, drink; if you want to be happy for three days, get married; if you want to be happy for a week, kill a pig and eat it; if you want to be happy for a lifetime, learn how to fish. (話者 < 聴者)  
A Quote from 開高健.

The notes after the example signify that the 命令形 could be paraphrased out.

---

### 命令形 Studies

Studying the 命令形 also interests Japanese grammarians. The 命令形 has been given many names. Some include 放任形 (non-interference form) and 命令法. However, is the word 命令 the most appropriate word?

One interesting usage that is typically not mentioned is that the 命令形 is the chosen command pattern for decrees in law. Related to this is the usage of it by bosses.

39. 止まれ  
Stop!

This is the Japanese traffic lingo equivalent to "STOP" on stop signs. This shows an imperative and obligation to motorists and pedestrians to stop.

---

### In 敬語

This has all been in regards to non-敬語 situations. There are things such as ～なさい and ～ませ that have different social implications that you need to pay close attention to.

40. いらっしやいませ。  
Welcome!

This usage, for example, is a very important set phrase that you hear all the time when entering businesses and restaurants.

41. 勉強しなさい。  
Study!

This is something that you would hear a stern parent tell his child. Again, just as is the case in English, social dynamics play a crucial role in how commands of any kind are perceived. As you have surely seen a lot of Japanese by now, this shouldn't be hard to understand.

## 第202課: 連用形 → Noun

Verbs in the 連用形 can be very noun-like. Whether the result is actually a true-noun, a limited noun, or rarely like a noun shouldn't distract us from noting how verbs in this form can clearly deviate from a truly verbal meaning.

First, let's assume that a lot of verbs can at least be noun-like in some contexts. We can see at least five different types of resultant noun phrases.

1. Those that are so completely independent from the verb that they are separate words in the lexicon (vocabulary of the language).
2. Those that are independent in the sense that they can stand alone as a noun in a sentence without the aid of context or additional words.
3. Those that may stand alone as a noun but need contextual support through phrasing to make sense.
4. Those that need to be in a compound to function properly as a noun phrase.
5. Those that are found in constructions like 連用形+に+Motion verb in which the noun-like phrase is too verbal to be considered a true noun phrase.

### Type 1

Our example verb for this category is 光 (light). Although its meaning of radiance in 目の光 gets closer to its verb roots, if we were to say ○が光り○, we would treat 光り as a verb phrase in the 連用形. This difference between hikari and hikar-i suggests that the first comes from the second, but it has lost its literal connection to the verb 光る. The second clearly has not and is merely a form of the latter. In spelling, we distinguish the two for this verb, but that won't always be a guarantee.

If the verb in which the noun comes from has disappeared, then it becomes even clearer how independent the noun is from its verbal root. Some examples including the following.

霧きり (mist): Comes from the 連用形 of the old verb 霧る meaning “to mist”

相撲すもう (sumo wrestling): Comes from the 連用形 of the old verb 争 (すま) ぶ meaning to fight.

歌舞伎かぶき (Kabuki theatre): Comes from the 連用形 of the old verb かぶく meaning "to tilt (one's head)".

Another interesting example is the verb 歌う. We find that there are two nouns derived from it: 歌 and 謡い. The 漢字 have the same reading here, but the words うた and うたい have different meanings. The first can mean song or even poem (though when meant to mean poem it is often spelled as 詩). You may even see the character 唄 to refer to a song akin to a lullaby. The latter, 謡い, refers specifically to Noh song. We see that the latter clearly comes from the 連用形. At first glance, it seems that 歌 is from the root of the verb. In reality, it is probably from the contraction of うたい.

## Type 2

This is a less drastic form of Type 1. For 連用形 of this type, it can be used like any other noun grammatically. It needs no context to be understood in isolation as a noun phrase with a specific meaning. This does not mean that the 連用形 can be used verbally. So, we could say that 光 may belong here.

Many verbs regarding psychological and emotional state are represented here as well as human cognitive activities, speech acts, and actions regarding expression.

1. ほとんどの臓器ぞうきが日ごろ**休み**なく働き続けています。 (休む)

Almost all of your organs continue to work nonstop on a normal basis.

2. **疲つかれ**を感じたときは、自分の体が「休んで！」と言っているサインです。 (疲れる)

When you've felt fatigue, that's a sign from your body telling you "to take a rest!".

3. 薬と死の**匂**においがする場所から逃のがれる。 (匂う)

To escape from a place with the smell of medicine and death.

4. ISISの**狙ねらい**はシリアとイラクの国境こっきょう地帯ちたいにイスラム国家を樹立じゅりつするところにあります。 (狙う)

The aim of ISIS is to establish an Islamic State in the border region between Syria and Iraq.

5. エジプト市民しみんの**望のぞみ**は叶かなうのか。 (望む)

Will the hopes of the Egyptian people be fulfilled?

6. 新しい**知らせ**を伝える。 (知らせる)

To inform on a new notice.

7. 魔女まじょは森永家もりながけ全員ぜんいんに**呪のろい**をかけた。 (呪う)

The witch put a curse on all of the Morinaga family.

8. 川の**流れ**に沿って泳ぐ。 (流れる)  
To swim along the current of the river.

9. 難読な**ん**どく漢字**かん**じの**読み**を覚える方法**ほう**ほうを教えてください。  
(読む)

Could you teach me methods to remember the readings of difficult to read Kanji?

10. どうしても何時間も**怒い****かり**が収おさまらない。 (怒る)  
(My/X's) anger won't simmer down for hours no matter what.

Even though these are clearly nouns, they still individually can have odd restrictions.

11a. きょうは仕事で疲れたなあ。○

11b. きょうの仕事は疲れたなあ。○・△

11c. きょうの**働き**は**疲れ**だったなあ。 X (働く & 疲れる)

In this example, we see a major restriction on **働き** and **疲れ**. Even when you replace them with the correct words, the grammar is still off. This demonstrates how semantic and syntactic restrictions work in unison to form natural utterances like 11a. Take into consideration Ex. 12, which demonstrates the most natural and common use of **行き** as a suffix.

12. 日本にほん**行****ゆき**の飛行機ひこうきに乗る。 (行く = ゆく)  
To ride a plain bound for Japan.

### Type 3

Many verbs need context to be used independently. The point here is at least they can be stand-alone nouns. They just need help to make any sense. Consider Ex. 13-14.

13a. **泳ぎ**は体にいいですね。 X (泳ぐ)

13b. 泳ぐことは体にいいですね。○

Swimming is good for you.

14. やっぱり魚は**泳ぎ**が速いね。 (泳ぐ)  
Fish are definitely fast at swimming.

Ex. 13 demonstrates how if you give the wrong sort of help, you get a bad sentence. Many examples of this are found in set idiomatic phrases. Some require a XはYが structure to appear whereas others simply want a subject attribute. The requirements to have these sort of nouns work varies a lot, which is why the mastery of this type is going to be very difficult. You have to in a sense get used to how Japanese phrases things, which is not an easy task.



- 15a. 高まりを感じる。X (高まる)  
15b. 心の高まりを感じる。○  
To feel an emotional high.
16. 彼は分かりが遅おそい。 (分かる)  
He's a slow learner.
17. 画面がめんの映うつりが悪いですね。 (映る)  
The quality of the screen is bad, isn't it?
18. エンジンのかかりが遅おそい。 (かかる)  
The engine starts up slowly.
19. 庖丁ほうちょうがなまって切れが悪くなった。 (切れる)  
The kitchen knife has gotten dull and doesn't cut well.
20. 神経の伝つたわりを遮断しゃだんすることで痛みを和やわらげる治療ちりょうです。 (伝わる)  
This is a treatment to alleviate pain by circumventing neural transmissions.
21. 内臓ないぞうは腐くさが早い。 (腐る)  
Innards rot quickly.
21. エアコンの効ききが悪い。 (効く)  
The air conditioning doesn't work well.
22. 今年はピーマンの出来できがイマイチですよ。 (出来る)  
The pepper turnout this year is not that good.
23. 喫煙きつえんなどは、血ちの巡めぐりを悪くする主おもな原因げんいんである。  
(巡る)  
Smoking and the like is a major factor in worsening blood circulation.
24. 細長く粘ねばりのない米こめに馴染なじむ。 (粘る)  
To get to non-sticky thin rice.
25. 枝えだが湿しめっていて、焚たき火びの燃もえが悪い。 (燃える)  
The branches are damp, and so the bonfire's flame is bad.

## Type 4

The next group requires compounding. Do not think, though, that words can't be in more than one category. Rather, we must truly investigate individual meanings of a word to determine what type it belongs to. For example, 出汁だし (soup stock) comes from 出す and would be an example of Type 1. Aside from this, 出し needs to be in a compound like ゴミ出し to work as a noun.

Because of this required compounding, you do sometimes get sequential voicing.

26. プロでも雪下ゆきおろしは困難こんなんです。 (下ろす)  
Removing snow is even difficult for professionals.

27. 江戸えど時代じだいの根付を相続そうぞくする。 (付ける)  
To inherit netsuke from the Edo Period.

**Item Note:** Netsuke are small miniature carvings that are placed at the end of cords hanging from a pouch of some sort.

28. 木造もくぞう2階建てが全焼ぜんしょうしました。 (建てる)  
The wooden, two-story structure completely burned up.

29. 2014年の梅雨入つゆいりは6月8日とされています。 (入る = いる)  
They say that the start of 2014's rainy season was June, 8th.

30. 数字すうじ合あわせ錠じょうを使うのが便利べんりです。 (合わせる)  
Using a number combination lock is convenient.

31. 昼寝のあとに頭痛づつうがします。 (寝る)  
I have headaches after an afternoon nap.

32. 失策しっさくの穴埋あなうめを国民に求める。 (埋める)  
To seek the patching of a failed policy from the people.

33. 鮭さけと野菜やさいをごちゃ混ぜにして焼きます。 (混ぜる)  
We mix salmon and vegetables together and cook them.

34. 結婚の話が立ち消ぎえになった。 (消える)  
The talk of marriage fizzled away.

35. 人々の行き来が賑にぎやかだった。 (来る)  
The coming and going of people was lively.

---

### 連用形 → Noun → する Verb

At times, a noun made in this way may attach to another noun, but to be used verbally again, it needs to become a verb by adding する, which will be introduced shortly. As we haven't gone over how to conjugate this verb yet, we'll just look at some examples of this phenomenon. Consider the following words.

Phrase	Reading	Meaning	Phrase	Reading	Meaning
目隠しする	めかくしする	To blindfold	タグ付けする	たぐつけする	To tag

粗探しする      あらさがしする      To nitpick      拾い読みする      ひろいよみする      To browse

**Part of Speech Note:** The あら in 粗探し is actually from the stem of the adjective 粗い (rough/coarse).

## Type 5: 連用形＋に＋Motion Verb

In the grammar pattern 連用形＋に＋Motion Verb plus a few other instances we'll see later on in Japanese grammar, verbs that do or don't fall in the categories above are able to be used like nouns while simultaneously holding onto their verbal meaning.

If you want to say things like "I am going to watch the movie", you must use this grammar pattern. The Japanese for this is 私は映画を見に行きます. The grammar is very parallel to English. In both languages, we would never call the verb a noun, per say. However, it certainly behaves like one in this situation.

If the verb is a する verb made by putting する after a Sino-Japanese word, then you don't even need し. So, say you want to say, I'm going to observe at Kyoto University. You could say 京都大学を見学しに行きます. However, you could just say 京都大学を見学に行きます. Either way is grammatically fine.

---

### Examples

36. 私は一人でイチゴを探しに歩きました。  
I walked to search for strawberries by myself.
37. 慌あわてて荷物にもつを取りに戻もどった。  
I rushed to return to get my luggage.
38. 彼は遊びに来た。  
He came to play.
39. 相談そうだん（し）に来る。  
To come to discuss.
40. 買い物ものに行く。  
To go shopping.

**Sentence Note:** 買い物をする is the verb phrase!

**Phrase Note:** ～物 attaches to the 連用形れんようけい of verbs of type 4 to refer to the things that you do the action with. So, 飲み物 = drink, 食べ物 = food, and 読み物 = reading (material).

41. 僕ぼくらは映画えいがを見に来たよ。  
We came to see a movie.

42. 晩ばんご飯はんを食べに来ませんか。

Will you come to eat dinner?

43. 妻つまはハンドバッグを取りに帰った。

My wife went home to go get her handbag.

## 第203課: 連用中止形

Instead of using the particle て, there is also a method called the 連用中止形. This is when you use the 連用形 but attach nothing to it, and in doing so, it functions like the particle て. This was in fact the original way. However, no two methods in Japanese evolve without differences emerging as well.

### The 連用中止形

One of the first problems with using the 連用形 is that most learners don't know what it is. Even though by now you should know exactly what it is, here is a reminder.

Class	Example	終止形	連用形
一段	見る	見る	見
五段	勝つ	勝つ	勝ち
サ変	する	する	し
カ変	来る	来る	来
形容詞	少ない	少ない	少なく
形容動詞	簡単だ	簡単だ	簡単で (あり)

When you use いる in this grammatical pattern, you have to use おり, which is the 連用形 of its humble form おる. You should not use the 連用形 い. However, in older works, you do find ~てい instead of ~ており.

1. また、これまでに18万人が住まいを追われ、このうち7万5000人が各地にある国連のPKO＝平和維持活動の施設に避難しており、国連は安全の確保や人道支援に全力を挙げているとしています。

Also, there have been 180,000 people driven from their dwellings, and of these, 75,000 have evacuated to UN PKO (Peacekeeping Operations) facilities, and the UN are putting all forces to human aid and safety security.

From the NHK Article 南スーダン緊張 7万人以上が避難 on December 31, 2013.

2. 出来た。出来ないにしろ、二人がお互いに愛してい、女が自分の存在に無頓着ならば、自分はどうすることも出来なかったにちがいない。

I was able to do it. Even if I couldn't, the two love each other, and had the women been indifferent to my own existence, there is no doubt that I wouldn't have been able to do anything.

From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

Though more common in literature, due to the fact that they are two morae verbs, 見る, 寝る, and 来る are not near as common in this. This, though, is keeping in mind mediums such as very formal speech where this grammar structure is seen in the spoken language. As this is mainly 書き言葉, the frequency of any verb in this is determined by the refinement and formality of the language used. For instance, the Bible has a plethora of examples of the 連用中止形.

3. わたしは一つの事を主に願った。わたしはそれを求める。わたしの生きるかぎり、主の家に住んで、主のうるわしきを見、その宮で尋ねきわめることを。

I desired one thing from the Lord; that I sought. For as long as I live, may I dwell in the house of the Lord, look upon his beauty, and seek him in his temple.

From 詩篇しへん第二十七章四節 口語訳

Again, instead of ～て, you can just use the 連用形, which is quite literary. Verbs and adjectives may be used in this way. It sounds more refined, and is often used in songs and poems.

4. 本を {読んで・読み}、しばらく考える。  
To think awhile from reading a book.

5. 街中は人も少なく（て）、たまに車が通り過ぎるだけだった。  
There were few people downtown and cars only occasionally passed by.

However, to truly investigate the interchangeability of the two, you need to know what て does and then see if there are any usages that can't be expressed with the 連用中止形. ～て, as has been seen in previous lessons, can be used to show successive action, ancillary/incidental conditions, cause/reason, and parallelism. The points of contingency involve ancillary conditions and cause/reason.

6a. 食べすぎて、お腹が痛い。○

6b. 食べすぎ, お腹が痛い。 ○/?

7a. 座って話す。○

7b. 座り、話す。X

In the first example, not using て means not establishing a cause-effect relationship. Rather, you end up just showing successive action.

Although using the 連用中止形 for showing successive action, it causes the sentence to sound very segmented, which may very well be how you want to express something, which can be seen in the first example. Though, in more spoken statements, it is more natural to mix it with て.

8. 過去を忘れ、職を探し、社員になり、私の生活は立派になりました。

I forgot the past, I looked for a job, I became a company employee, and my way of life became amazing.

9. お母さんは雑誌を読み、コーヒーを飲んで、出かけた。

My mother read a magazine, drank coffee, and left.

Consider the following bad sentence where て is the problem rather than the 連用中止形.

10a. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人じょうもんじんは狩人かりゅうどであって、漁夫ぎょふだった。X

10b. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であり、漁夫だった。○  
The Jomon people who were the first in the Japanese islands to first form their own culture were farmers and fishermen.

This is the case because て borders sounding like it shows a contrast. To keep であって, it would have been best to have a just as equally complex latter clause that balances out the meaning of the first. The use of the 連用中止形 has no such problem and nicely segments the two properties in a formal fashion.

11. 太股ふとももの上で握り拳こぶしを作っていた信人は、切ない気持ちで、上目遣うわめづかいに上司を見た。

Nobuto, who had made a fist on top her thighs, looked with an upward glance and saddened emotion at her boss.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

---

## Article from NHK

As stated earlier, one of the most common places you can find the 連用中止形 used is in writing. News articles utilize this pattern a lot. Notice how it is used in concert with て in the following article from NHK.

12.

### 元同級生を車内でも暴行ぼうこうか

7月19日 4時20分

広島県呉市くれしの山中に元同級生とみられる遺体を遺棄いきしたとして広島市の16歳の少女と知り合いの男女ら6人が逮捕たいほされた事件で、7人の一部は山中に向かう車の中で、元同級生を**押さえつけ**、暴行を繰り返していたとみられることが警察への取材で分かりました。

警察は初めから暴行を加えるつもりで元同級生を車で連れ出した疑いがあるとみて捜査そうさを進めています。

今月14日、広島県呉市の山中に、高等専修こうとうせんしゅう学校の元同級生の16歳の少女とみられる遺体を遺棄したとして警察に自首じしゅうした広島市の16歳の少女が**逮捕され**、17日、鳥取県とっとりけん湯梨浜町ゆりはまちょうの無職、瀬戸大平せとおおひら容疑者(21)と、16歳の無職の男女5人が死体遺棄の疑いで逮捕されました。

警察の調べに**対し**瀬戸容疑者は容疑を**否認し**、ほかの6人は容疑を認めているということです。

これまでの調べで7人が、元同級生を車に乗せて現場の山中に**行き**、車を降りたあと、集団で暴行を加えたと供述していることが分かっていて、警察は使われたとみられる車を18日夜、押収おうしゅうしました。その後の警察の調べで、7人の一部は、現場へ向かう車の中で、元同級生を**押さえつけて**殴なぐったり蹴けったりする暴行を繰り返したとみられることが分かっていて、警察は使われたとみられる車を18日夜、押収おうしゅうしました。その後の警察の調べで、7人の一部は、現場へ向かう車の中で、元同級生を**押さえつけて**殴なぐったり蹴けったりする暴行を繰り返したとみられることが分かっていて、警察は使われたとみられる車を18日夜、押収おうしゅうしました。

ていたとみられることが警察への取材で分かりました。

元同級生への暴行が山中に着く前の車内から続いていることから、警察は、初めから暴行を加えるつもりで元同級生を車で連れ出した疑いがあるとみて捜査を進めています。

### Assaulting of Former Classmate also Inside Car?

July 19<sup>th</sup>, 4:20

It has been found out through police investigation that in the case in which a 16 year old girl and 6 men and women acquaintances from Hiroshima City were arrested for the abandonment of the body of a former classmate in the mountains of Hiroshima Prefecture Kure City, a group of 7 people inside a car towards the mountainside suppressed the former classmate, and repeatedly assaulted her. The police are furthering investigation into the suspicion that [the group] had taken the former student into the car with plans to assault her from the beginning.

This month on the 14<sup>th</sup>, a 16 year old girl who surrendered herself to police for the abandonment of the body in the mountains of Hiroshima Prefecture Kure City of a former 16 year old female student at [their] vocational high school was arrested, and on the 17<sup>th</sup>, unemployed 21 year old resident of Tottori Prefecture Yurihama Town Seto Ohira and 5 unemployed 16 year old men and women were arrested for suspicion in the body abandonment. Suspect Ohira denies claims from the police, but the 6 others have confessed.

In investigation up to now, it's understood that the 7 people are testifying that they put the former classmate into the vehicle, went to the scene in the mountains, and after getting off the vehicle, they group assaulted [her], and the police on the 18<sup>th</sup> seized the car thought to be used. In police investigation afterward, it has been found out from reports to the police that the group of 7 suppressed the former classmate inside the car towards the scene and repeatedly assaulted her by beating and kicking her.

In light of the the continuation of assault to their former classmate inside the vehicle before having reached the mountains, the police are furthering investigation into the charge that [the group] had brought the former student in the vehicle with plans to assault from the beginning.

## 第204課: Tense I: The Auxiliary Verb -TA

In its basic understanding, the auxiliary verb -TA stands for the past tense, especially when it is in a mono-clausal sentence (a sentence with a single clause) in isolation from other grammatical circumstances. This can be demonstrated with the following examples.

1a. 私わたしはきのう、登山とざんをしました。○

1b. 私わたしはきのう、登山とざんをします。X

I mountain climbed yesterday.

2a. 細こまかいことは明日発表あすはっぴょうします。○

2b. 細こまかいことは明日発表あすはっぴょうしました。X

I will announce the fine details tomorrow.

These sentences demonstrate a basic understanding of what non-past and past tense are in Japanese, but they ignore the other varied nuances and situations that both forms can represent. This is because mono-clausal sentences like these only make up a small percentage of the complexity that can be found in the language.

Whenever you read a book or listen to speakers talk, you will notice that -TA and -RU/U (the morphemes used in the 'non-past' form) alternate from one to the other, and you'll also notice that they often deviate far away from the concept of tense-agreement found in English. One grammatical circumstance that negates the notion that these endings are fixated to one tense is the creation of conditionals.

3. ドアを開あけたら、必かならず閉しめてください。  
If you open the door, please make sure to close it.

4. ドアを開あけると、コウモリが入はいってきた。  
When I opened the door, a bat came inside.

Seeing as how the tense in both the dependent clauses of 3 and 4 are the same in English, the fact that there is this dichotomy between -TA and -RU/U is perplexing. Never will you see 開けるら, and never will you see 開けたと. One way to explain this is that Japanese makes a distinction between foreground and background circumstances. When something happens/is so in the background, it usually or must take -RU/U. This means that for 4, the door opening is a pretext for the bat having entered the home. The door is presumably open when the bat enters, and so that clause takes -RU. The bat entering is at the foreground of the sentence and thus takes -TA. In 3, the action of having opened the door is at the foreground when you get to closing it back shut. Therefore, it takes -TA. These examples demonstrate a need to analyze these endings far more closely.

First, we will study the individual usages of -TA. Then, in the next lesson we'll study the individual usages of -RU/U. By doing so, you'll see how they both heavily reflect the speaker's intent rather than follow concrete rules, which inevitably means that context must be looked at. Instead of having the decision between the two be mechanical based on a handful of criteria, deciding between the two often relies on a feel for the situation--pragmatics. As we study these forms, think about the dynamics that could change how you interpret them--time, voice (narrator versus self), state, etc.

---

**Notation Note:** For this lesson and the one that follows, the forms -RU/U, -TA, -TE IRU, and -TE ITA will be Romanized as such due to the technical nature of the discussion at hand. Although this lesson focuses on -TA, it also makes note usages of these other forms due to their similarities.

**Terminology Note:**

1. A morpheme is a meaningful unit of language that cannot be further divided.
2. The copula is also treated as being grammatically equal to -RU/U. All



references to -RU/U, therefore, will also apply to it. The non-past forms of adjectives also count as being in the -RU/U form.

## Etymology of -TA

The auxiliary verb -TA comes from the conjunctive particle て combined with the existential verb あり (Modern ある). At this time, it took the form たり and served to either show completion or continuation. Meaning, it was equivalent to either てしまった or である・ている. Both these two meanings survive in their respective capacities in Modern Japanese. The large reason for why -TA has taken on so many meanings was that there were several other endings for aspect that collapsed into -TA over time.

-TA attaches to the 連用形 of conjugatable parts of speech. The bases of -TA—both classical and modern—are shown below:

The Bases 活用形	Classical 古文	Modern 現代語
Irrealis 未然形	たら	たろ
Continuative 連用形	たり	たり
Terminal 終止形	たり	た
Attributive 連体形	たる	た
Realis 已然形		
Hypothetical 仮定形	たれ	たら
Imperative 命令形	たれ	た

As implied by the chart, the particle たり is the continuative form (連用形 れんようけい) of -TA. Also, the particle たら is treated as the hypothetical form (仮定形 かていけい) of -TA. Additionally, note how -TA has an imperative form. This will be one of the many usages discussed.

## Usages of -TA

1. The most basic meaning of -TA is to demonstrate a situation that has happened (**past tense**) or has been completed (**perfect tense**) in the past. The nature of the act/event must be assessed by the context at hand to determine whether -TA denotes a past and/or perfect tense interpretation.

---

1a. In English, the **past tense** is made by adding -(e)d to the base form of the verb. Its function is to talk about the past. The “**past simple**” form is simply the verb + -(e)d and nothing more. The “**past continuous/progressive**” form, which denotes a continuing action which began in the past, involves the pattern “was + verb + -ing.”

- i. I worked. → 私わたしは働はたらきました。(Past Simple)
- ii. I was working. → 私わたしは働はたらいていました。(Past Continuous)

Both -TA and -TE ITA can indicate past events/states whose duration was long. However, -TA does not explicitly denote duration of a past event.

5. 生徒せいとたちが実験じっけんを行おこないました。(Past Simple)

The students **conducted** an experiment.

6. 大雨洪水警報おおあめこうずいけいほうが発表はっぴょうされた。(Past Simple + Passive)

A storm-flood warning **was announced**.

7. 私わたしも話はなしていました。(Past Continuous/Progressive)

I **was also speaking**.

8a. 彼かれが戦争せんそうに対たいする思おもいを語かたった。

8b. 彼が戦争に対する思いを語っていました。

He **spoke of** his thoughts towards war. (9a)

He **was speaking of** his thoughts towards war. (9b)

---

1b. The perfect tenses are created by using the appropriate tense of the auxiliary verb “to have”—or “got”—plus the past participle of a verb.

iii. I have worked. → 働はたらいたことがあります。(Present Perfect)

iv. I had worked. → (かつて) 働はたらいていました。(Past Perfect/Pluperfect)

v. I will have worked. → それまでに働はたらいたでしょう。(Future Perfect)

The **present perfect** is used to denote a past event that has occurred and been completed in the past yet has consequences in the present. In iii., the present consequence is that one has a work history. Similarly, the **present progressive perfect** is used to denote an action that has occurred up to the present and may continue.

9. アメリカ政府せいふが北朝鮮きたちょうせんに対たいして挑発行為ちょうはつこういをやめるよう改あらためて求めた。(Present Perfect)

The American government **has** once again **requested** that North Korea stop its provocations.

10. 受取人うけとりになが既すでに死亡しぼうしていた場合ばあい (Present Perfect)

In the case the recipient **has already died/is already deceased**

11. 彼はその秘密ひみつをずっと隠かくしていた！ (Present Progressive Perfect)

He **has been hiding** that secret the whole time!

12. うまく成長せいちょうしたね。

You've sure **grown**, huh.

13. 彼女かのじょは背せが高たかくなった。(Simple Past/Present Perfect)

She **became tall/has become tall**.

14. いつの間まにか声こえが低ひくくなった。(Present Perfect)

My voice **got deep** before I knew it.

-TE IRU may also express the present perfect if the state the action brings about is ongoing. This, though, can and is most often expressed with -TA when modifying nouns.

15. 停電でいでんが広ひろい範囲はんいで発生はっせいしている。  
A blackout **has occurred** over a wide extent (**and is still ongoing**).

16. 不思議ふしぎな形かたちをした建物たてものが並ならんでいる。  
Buildings **in** mysterious shapes **are lined up**.

The **past perfect/pluperfect** is used to denote a past event that had already been completed prior to a point in time which is referred to. In iv., the point in time when the speaker had worked is prior to “now” or an unspecified “then.” Although iv. utilizes -TE ITA, the past perfect can still be reworded to use -TA like in Ex. 17.

17. 過去かこに一回いっかい働はたらいたことがあります。  
I **had worked** once in the past.

18. 乗のっていた3人にんが死亡しぼうした。(Pluperfect/Past Continuous)  
The three people who **were/had been riding** died.

19. 安全あんぜんバーの鉄製てつせいの棒ぼうが根元付近ねもとふきんで折おれていたことが分かりました。(Pluperfect/Present Perfect)  
It has been discovered that the metal rod near the base of the safety bar **had/has been broken**.

**Sentence Note:** Because it is likely that the rod is still not fixed as it is piece of evidence, the present perfect interpretation is also valid.

The **future perfect** is a verb form used to describe an event that is expected/planned to happen before a future point in time. This is usually denoted by -TA + でしょう, but the form is not limited to this for the future perfect (Ex. 20). The **future progressive perfect** also exists with -TE IRU, which indicates an event that is expected/planned to happen in the future whose effects are forecast to continue even after the event realizes.

20. 健太けんたが結婚けっこんした自分じぶんを想像そうぞうしてみた。  
Kenta imagined himself as a **married** man.

---

2. Utilizing the past tense (in English translation), -TA may denote a **situation that occurred under certain circumstances in the past**. The circumstance may in fact be that it was in the past that one “**would/used to**” do something. With states, this would be interpreted as a repetitive situation in the past. With actions, this would be interpreted as habitual repetition.

21. あの頃ころは幸しあわせだった。  
I used to be happy in those days.

22. あの頃ころは良よかった。  
Those were the good old days.

23. かつてあの店みせに行いきました。  
I once would/used to go to that store.

24a. 若わかい頃ころ、町まちの墓地ぼちをよく歩あるいたものだ。

24b. 若わかい頃ころ、町まちの墓地ぼちをよく歩あるいたものだった。

I frequently used to walk the town's cemetery when I was young. (24a)

He/she used to walk the town's cemetery when he/she was young. (24b)

**Grammar Note:** “Used to” is frequently expressed with a verb in the -TA form while preceded by the adverb よく and followed by ものだ. The addition of ものだ gives a matter-of-fact nuance to the statement. The matter-of-fact being so in one's interpretation of the past calls for the copula to be in the non-past form, but when switching from first person to third person, ものだっ is used. This is because another person's past situation cannot be stated at the same emotional level as would be the case with ものだ.

25. あの頃ころは、よく見みに行いっていました。

Those days, I used to always go to see it.

**Grammar Note:** The use of ものだ is not a requirement to bring about the meaning of “used to” as has been shown to be the case in Ex. 22. In this example, -TE ITA is demonstrated to also hold this function without the intervention of ものだ. The difference is that the “matter-of-fact” nuance is lost. Translation-wise, the use of -TE ITA in conjunction with よく brings about a non-literal interpretation of “always.”

26. 学校がっこうから帰かえるとすぐに宿題しゅくだいを済すませた。

I would immediately finish my homework when I got home from school.

27. 歯はを磨みがくとよく出血しゅっけつしました。

I would often bleed when I brushed my teeth.

28. ジムに行いくとよく声こえをかけられました。

I would often be called out by someone when I went to the gym.

29. 買かい物ものデートに行いくと、よく彼女かのじょと喧嘩けんかしてしまいました。

I would often end up getting into arguments with my girlfriend when(ever) we went on shopping dates.

---

3. -TA may express a **sudden recalling of a future event/plan** that the speaker has already recognized as being definite. Many of the realizations we have in our daily lives involve things we already know about. Those facts may just be floating in the back of our minds until for some reason we remember about them and freak out. In the bigger picture, -TA can be viewed as denoting the point in time at which the speaker recognizes something to have already happened (Usages 1-2, 6-7) or recognize as being the case (Usages 3-5).

30. あ、明日試験あしたしけんがあった！

Ah, I have an exam tomorrow!

31. 明日仕事あしたしごとだった。。。。

I have work tomorrow...

32. 今日きょうは締切日しめきりびだった！  
Today's the deadline!

33. あ、忘わすれてた！  
Oops, I'd forgotten!

---

4. In the same vein, -TA may also show **sudden discovery** of a certain state that has been and is still so. This form of discovery also implies that the speaker thinks he/she should have known about the discovery. In this sense, discovery is being treated semantically like remembering. This usage is also referred to as "Discovery Present" and is closely tied to present progressive perfect form.

34. ここだった！  
It's here!  
So it was here!

35. え、東京とうきょうにいたの？  
What, you're in Tokyo?

36. あ、引ひき出だしに {あった・入ってた} ！  
Ah, it's in the drawer!  
Ah, it was in the drawer!

37. あ、そこにいたの！  
There you are!

38. そう、ここにいたよ。  
Yep, I'm here.  
Yep, I was here along.

**Contrast Note:** If -RU/U were switched out in these sentences, they would still be grammatical. However, they would lose the indirect report feel because there would no longer be an implied admission that the speaker ought to have known.

---

5. Another usage of -TA is to request for **confirmation** of a fact from the listener. It may also be used in a rhetorical sense of confirmation. This usage is frequently employed in 敬語けいご to add another layer of formality when asking questions. It's important to note that the use of a past tense marker for seeking confirmation can also be seen in English.

39. 失礼しつれいですが、どちら様さまでしたか。  
I apologize for asking, but who were you again?

40. お名前なまえはなんと仰いましたか。  
What was your name?

41. 判子はんこをお持もちでしたね。  
You had your seal, correct?

42. 同席どうせきされた方かたはどなたでしたか。  
Who was it that you sat with?

43. 彼女かのじょ、何歳なんさいだ（った）っけ。  
How old was she?

44. 次つぎは私わたしの番ばんでしたか。  
Next turn was mine, was it.

45. 今日きょうは月曜日げつようびでしたね。  
Today's Monday, huh.

---

6. -TA may also be used to denote a **proclamation, assertion, and or realization of a situation that has not realized**; however, the situation is treated as if it has. This usage cannot be used with time expressions because it already has an implied sense of urgency for the statement to be taken seriously.

46. よし、買った！  
Alright, I'm buying it!

47. もうやめた。  
I quit.

48. もう諦あきらめた！  
I give up!

49. じゃあ、頼たのみましたよ。  
Alright, well, I'm counting on you.

50. よし、これで勝かった！  
Alright, I'll win with this!

---

7. -TA may be used to express an **urgent/immediate command**. This is the imperative usage of -TA mentioned earlier. How this works grammatically is that the speaker presses the listener so much to do something immediately that it's as if it's already been completed. Though not literally possible, this reflects the hyperbolic origin of this grammar point.

51. どいた、どいた！  
Step back, step back!

52. 子供は帰った、帰った！  
Kids go home, go home!

53. ちょっと待まった！  
Wait right there!

54. さあ、どんどん歩あるいた歩あるいた！  
Well, get to walking!

55. 座すわった、座すわった！  
Sit, sit!

## 第205課: Tense II: The Morpheme -RU/U

The morpheme -RU/U is one of the most fundamental morphemes in the Japanese language. Although it manifests differently depending on the part of speech, its functions remain depending on the semantic and syntactic conditions of the sentence.

In its basic understanding, the -RU/U form is thought of as being the non-past tense marker of Japanese. Although it is not limited to this interpretation, it can account for any usage in which it corresponds to either the present tense or future tense of English.

In this lesson, we will study the various usages of -RU/U form as well as learn how some of these usages overlap with -TA and -TE IRU. Before continuing, if you have not read through the previous lesson on -TA, please go back and read it first.

### -RU/U Morphology

In Japanese, the -RU/U form is typically simply referred to as the ル形けい. It is a linguistic yet colloquial term for the terminal form (終止形しゅうしけい) / attributive form (連体形れんたいけい). Because the latter terms are meant only to indicate morphology in relation to word order, we'll stick to calling this the "-RU/U form" for the purposes of this discussion.

After the root of any conjugatable speech is a morpheme that forms the -RU/U form. For *Ichidan* verbs (一段動詞いちだんどうし), the morpheme is most easily identified because it happens to be *-ru* which attaches to the stem of these verbs. For *Godan* Verbs (五段動詞ごだんどうし), the morpheme manifests as *-u*, which attaches to the consonant-ending stems that these verbs have. For adjectives, the morpheme manifests as *-i*, *-shii*, or *-jii*. For the copula, because it is a contraction of である, it is appropriate to treat *da* as a whole to be the morpheme.

### -RU/U: Present, Future, & Past

#### PRESENT TENSE

In English, the **present tense** expresses an action that is ongoing or habitually performed, or a state that currently and/or generally exists. -RU/U also expresses all these functions. However, it's first important to understand how flexible even the concept of "now" can be in both English and Japanese. Take for example the following sentences:

- i. My boyfriend just got home now. → 彼氏が今帰ったところだ。
- ii. My boyfriend is coming home now. → 彼氏が今帰っているところだ。
- iii. My boyfriend will come home now. → 彼氏が今帰る（ところだ）ね。
- iv. My boyfriend is home now. → 彼氏がもう帰っている。

We associate “now” with the present, but as these examples demonstrate, it is not fixated solely to the present tense. This is analogous to how the -RU/U form functions. These examples also scratch at the surface of how complex the endings -RU/U, -TA, and -TE IRU can be. For instance, -TE IRU can both denote the **present continuous/progressive** form like in ii. and the **present progressive perfect** form like in iv. In iii., the act of “coming home” is perceived to just be starting, which is in contrast to the continued ongoing state implied in ii.

1. The most fundamental usage of the -RU/U form is to show **present state**. Existential verbs, adjectives, and adjectival nouns are quintessential here. Present states may very well be ongoing. For instance, in Ex. 5, the existence of people who want to quit their jobs is a present state. The act of wanting to quit is an ongoing state that is marked with -TE IRU. This emphasizes duration of a continued ongoing state. When the “continued” aspect of an ongoing action is not implied, however, -RU/U should be used instead.

1. 庭にわには木きが3さん本ほんある。  
There are three trees in the (court)yard.

2. 北海道ほっかいどうを生息地せいそくちにする亀かめもいる。  
There **are** also turtles who **have** Hokkaido as their habitat.

3. 彩あやちゃんの服ふく、めっちゃかわいい。  
Aya-chan's clothes, they're so **cute**.

4. これが最高さいこう（だ）！  
This **is** the **best**!

**Grammar Note:** Even when the copula is omitted, the -RU/U morpheme is still present grammatically.

5. 仕事しごとを辞やめたがっている人がたくさんいる。  
There are lots of people who want to quit their jobs.

6. 何なんでもケチをつけたがる人ひとが抱いだく心理しんりとは何なに か。  
What is the mentality that people harbor who want to find fault in everything?

7. 猛烈もうれつな風かぜが吹ふいたと見みられ {ます・ています} 。  
It is believed that there was fierce wind.

2. In the same vein as Usage 1, the -RU/U form may also denote a **present psychological state**. This is frequently employed with verbal/adjectival expressions of emotion.

8. 本当ほんとうにむかつくわ。  
It really ticks me off.

9. 腹はらが立たつ。  
This makes me mad.



10. 鳥肌とりはだが立たつ。  
This gives me goosebumps.

11. 気持ちもち悪わるい。  
This is disgusting/unpleasant.

12. 怖こわい。  
I'm scared.

3. Some verbs are used in **utterances whose implications are instantaneous** with said utterance. These instances create what is known as the “utterance present (発言現在はつげんげんざい).

13. 誓ちかいます。  
I vow.

14. ご冥福めいふくをお祈いのりします。  
I pray for his/her/their soul(s).

15. 二人ふたりの幸しあわせを願ねがいます。  
I wish for the two's happiness.

16. 約束やくそくする！  
I promise!

4. Sometimes, as if we're narrating to ourselves, or perhaps when we are narrating, the -RU/U form is used similarly to that of an **infinitive** to describe what is happening/is to happen in front of the speaker's/one's eyes. Of course, if the action can't literally be seen with the eyes, this discrepancy doesn't stop this usage from being valid.

Grammar Note: An **infinitive** is the basic form of verb which has no inflection binding it to a particular subject and/or tense, and this too is a function of the -RU/U form.

17. 雨あめが降ふる。  
Rain falls (in front of my eyes).

18. 韓国料理かんこくりょうりを食たべ尽つくす。  
Consuming Korean cuisine.

19. 刃やいばが刺ささる。  
The blade pierces.

20. 息いきが止とまる。  
My breath stops.

5. **Habitual repetition** is another facet of a person's current state. -TE IRU can similarly be used to denote what one “always does,” but it must be used with adverbs of frequency to establish this meaning. This is so that it can show present habitual action rather than an ongoing action. Even so, it doesn't denote an inherent habitualness. The -RU/U form need not have such adverbs for this meaning to be had. However, it conversely becomes far

more open ended in interpretation without words like “always” or “every day.” It could be interpreted as future intent without context guiding the listener to think habitual action.

Whenever the speaker feels a need to emphasize his current habit, especially when criticized for not doing something, the use of -TE IRU becomes imperative. Habitual statements with -RU/U are most suitable in neutral situations where there is no need to emphasize one’s current habit(s).

**Grammar Note:** This usage may also be used in the second and third person in question form.

21. いつも零時れいじに寝ねます。  
I always go to sleep at midnight.

22. 私わたしは食後しょくごに歯はを磨みがきます。  
I brush my teeth after eating.  
I will brush my teeth after eating (from now on).

23. 毎朝まいあさシャワーを浴あびます。  
I take a shower every morning.

24. 毎週教会まいしゅうきょうかいに行いきますか。  
Do you go to church every week?

25a. 私わたしは毎日公園まいにちこうえんを散歩さんぽします。  
25b. 私わたしは毎日公園まいにちこうえんを散歩さんぽしています。  
I walk the park every day. (25a)  
I’m walking the park every day. (25b)

26. 君きみがいると、いつも笑わらえてる。  
I’m always able to laugh when you’re here (with me).

27. 人ひとに話はなしている途中とちゅうで、何なにをしたかったのか忘わすれてしま  
うことはありませんか。  
While talking to someone, do you ever forget what you wanted to talk about?

6. Yet another nuance that falls under the umbrella of current state is denoting a **characteristic and/or general truth**. However, a general truth need not literally be a current state. It could be a situation that regularly occurs under certain conditions.

28. カモメは主おもに水辺みずべに棲すみます。  
Seagulls mainly live at waterfronts.

29. 中国語ちゅうごくごって難むずかしい。  
Chinese is difficult.

30. 君きみはよく喋しゃべるね。  
You sure talk a lot.

31. 毛虫けむしが蝶ちょうに変かわります。  
Caterpillars become butterflies.

32. 一般人いっばんじんは人ひとを殺ころすと逮捕たいほされます。  
When ordinary person murders someone, he gets arrested.

33. 日本にほんは地震じしんが多おおいところだ。  
Japan is a place where there are many earthquakes.

34. 地震じしんはプレートが元もとに戻もどろうとする時ときに起こります。  
Earthquakes occur when plates try to return to their original positions.

---

### **FUTURE TENSE**

7. The future tense in English denotes **an action/state that has not yet happened**. Even when it is used by itself with no other modal changes, -RU/U can indicate something that you are rather certain will occur in the future.

35. もうすぐ消灯時間しょうとうじかんだ。  
It's almost lights-out.

36. 電気でんきが消きえるね。  
The lights will go off, ok?

37. 明日あしたは休日きゅうじつだ。  
Tomorrow is a holiday.

38. 帰かえる途中とちゅうで銀行ぎんこうに寄よってください。  
Please stop by the bank while you're coming home.

39. きっと合格ごうかくするよ。  
You'll definitely pass.

8. -RU/U may show **first-person intention** and/or plan when used in the future tense. It must, though, be paired with a verb of volition (意志動詞). -RU/U may also simply provide information about what will happen in the future depending on the situation. In English, the -ing form or "going to..." pattern are frequently used for this.

**Grammar Note:** This usage may also be used in second person and third person in the form of a question. It may also be used in the affirmative in third person, but the -RU/U form must be paired with a modal change that incorporates a less direct tone. Lastly, when this usage is used in the affirmative in second person, it creates a command (See Usage 11).

40. 明日あすテキサスに発たちます。  
I head out to Texas tomorrow.

41. 今夜こんやは晩御飯ばんごはんを外食がいしょくにする。  
Tonight, I'm going to eat out for dinner.

42. 会社かいしゃを辞やめます。

I'm quitting/going to quit my job (at the company).

43. 私用しょうで休暇きゅうかを取ります。

I'm taking/going to take

44. 私わたしは明日あすから1いっ週間京都しゅうかんきょうとへ行いきます。

As of tomorrow, I will be going to Kyoto for a week.

45. はい、私わたしが行いきます。

Yes, I am the one going.

46. はい、消費税しょうひぜいは来月らいげつから2に-%パーセントほど引ひき上あげられることになります。

Yes, as of next month, the consumers tax will be risen approximately two percent.

47. 何人なんにん来きますか。

How many people are coming?

48. この車くるまがいくらなら買かいますか。

How much would you buy this car for?

49. 台風たいふう3さん号ごうは、九州きゅうしゅうの南部なんぶに接近せっきんしていて、間まもなく上陸じょうりくする見込みこみです。

Typhoon No. 3 is approached the southern portion of Kyushu, and it is forecast to make landfall any moment.

9. With a rising intonation, -RU/U indicates **surprise about a future event**. In second person, it can show disbelief, rebuke, or scoffing toward a statement the speaker deems improbable. However, it is not limited to these sorts of negative nuances in second person. You can express surprise about a future event in first and second person.

**Grammar Note:** -RU/U may also indicate surprise about a present state. Unlike the -TA form, it doesn't imply that the speaker should have known, and it doesn't indicate the reality at hand as having been recognized in the past.

47. え、私が行く？

What, I'm going?

48. え、山田君がやる？冗談でしょう？

What, you're going to do it, Yamada-kun? You're joking, right?

49. あ、やってくれる？ありがとう！

Oh, you're going to do it? Thank you!

50. 戦争せんそうが終おわる？それは恐おそらく有あり得えないだろう。

The war's going to end? That's probably impossible.

51. 今年中ことしじゅうに首都直下地震しゅとちよっかじしんが起おきます？

There's going to be an earthquake directly hitting the Tokyo area within this year?

52. あ、そうだ！今日午後きょうごご3さん時半じはんに会議かいぎがある。  
Ah, that's right! There's a meeting at 3:30 PM today.

53. あ、あのひと鈴木すずきさんだ。  
Ah, that person is Mr. Suzuki.

### **INSTRUCTION**

10. The -RU/U form may also be used to show step-by-step instructions. This is frequently used in recipes. The instructions are not necessarily directed at one particular person; however, commands can be made by using the -RU/U form (Usage 11).

54. 油あぶらをフライパンに入いれて、175ひゃくななじゅうご度どくらいになるまでに火ひを付つける。  
Add cooking oil to the frying pan and heat until it is about 175 degrees.

55. 鍋なべに湯ゆを沸わかし、豆腐とうふを崩くずし入いれて、笊ざるにあげて水みずを切きる。  
Boil water in the pot, break up the tofu, and drain in a strainer.

56. 調味料ちょうみりょうと玉たまネギを加くわえて炒いため、溶とき卵たまごを加くわえて軽かるく混まぜ、火ひを止とめる。  
Sauté upon adding spices and onion, add a beaten egg and lightly mix, and then turn off the heat.

57. 牛肉ぎゅうにくは食たべやすい大おおきさに切り、片栗粉かたくりこをまぶす。  
As for the beef, cut it into easy to eat sizes and then smear the beef with potato starch.

58. スキレットにごま油あぶらを薄うすくひいて火ひにかけ、ご飯はんを広ひろげて載のせる。  
Lightly cover the skillet with sesame oil, add heat, and spread the rice on top.

### **COMMAND**

11. When -RU/U is used to make a command, it does not have the same time constraint that -TA has. Although it implies that the listener better get to it--which is why it is often used by teachers, parents, or people with a clear higher status over someone else—it is not the case that it has to happen immediately for it to be grammatical.

59. さっさと片付かたづける。  
Get to cleaning up.

60. 10じゅう秒後びょうごに走はしる。  
Run in ten seconds.

This sentence would likely be said by a coach and/or someone who would be instructing you to do something. This sentence demonstrates how the “instruction” meaning of -RU/U derives from its sense of command. The pragmatic difference is that the “instructions” given in the -RU/U form are very frequently in polite speech. Even so, an instructor/knowledgeable

person instructing is intrinsically higher in position than the listener learning from said individual.

61. すぐに食たべる！  
Eat it now!

**Sentence Note:** Ex. 61 would most likely be said by a semi-strict parent.

62. 我々われわれは出発しゅっぱつする。  
We're departing.

**Sentence Note:** The use of first person plural allows for a rather subtle yet explicit means of getting others to act alongside oneself. The person saying this would be the leader of the group.

63. 君きみは明日あすから大阪おおさかへ出張しゅっちょう {する・だ}。  
You will be going to Osaka on business starting tomorrow.

64. このお客きゃくさんは君きみが接待せったい {する・だ}。  
You'll be entertaining this patron.

65. 今いまだ！  
Now!

**Sentence Note:** Ex. 65 can be used without imposing a sense of social hierarchy. However, the person stating it would still be taking the initiative to get others to act.

65. 書かくんだ！  
Write!

**Grammar Note:** Though not exactly the same, it is important to note that the -RU/U form is used with のだ・んだ instead of the -TA form. This is due to the time restriction placed on -TA form imperatives.

---

## PAST TENSE

12. -RU/U need not always refer to non-past time. There are instances where it does refer to a past event. If -TA were used, it would indicate that the speaker perceives the situation to be remote, but if -RU/U were used, it would mean that the past situation is perceived as if it were directly before the speaker. -TA suggests a detached, objective attitude on the part of the speaker toward the situation, but -RU/U suggests the speaker's subjective and psychological involvement with the situation.

When both -RU/U and -TA are present together, the -RU/U event/state must either be clearly completed/established before the -TA event/state. For instance, in Ex. 67, Mr. Hirota had good-looking teeth before ever showing them when he smiled. Ex. 67 also demonstrates how this facet of the -RU/U form also affects choosing between -TE IRU and -TE ITA. The latter would show definitive completion of a once ongoing event, which is not logical to posit in Ex. 67.

66. ひどいことを言うね。  
What a horrible thing to say.

67. 山田やまださんは歯はを出だして笑わらった。割わりと綺麗きれいな歯はをもっている。  
Mr. Hirota smiled showing his teeth. He had rather good-looking teeth.

68. 女房にようぼうがどうしても結婚けっこんしてほしいって泣ないて頼たのむから、仕方しかたなく結婚けっこんしてやったんだよ。  
My wife had cried and begged that I marry her, and so I reluctantly did.

69. 卵たまごがないと文句もんくを言うから、もう一回いっかい買かいに行いったの。  
You complained about there being no eggs, so I went out again to go buy some.

70. 血ちも涙なみだもないことを言うから、バチが当あたったんだ。  
You got what you deserved for saying something so heartless.

## 第206課: ～ては

In this lesson, we will learn about the grammar point ～ては, which is a combination of the conjunctive particle て and the bound particle は, used here in its contrastive role. Firstly, as a very brief reminder, below is a quick summation of how to conjugate with ～ては. Because this grammar pattern only concerns verbs, we'll only need to worry about when ～ては may become ～では. This occurs for *Godan* verbs which end in ぐ・ぶ・む・ぬ.

<i>Ichidan</i> Verb	食べる + ては → 食べては
<i>Godan</i> Verb	立つ + ては → 立っては
	死ぬ + ては → 死んでは
する	する + ては → しては
くる	くる + ては → きては
だ	だ + ては → では

**Curriculum Note:** This lesson does not cover how the contrastive は can go after the gerund use of the particle て as seen in phrases like ～について, ～に関して, ～に対して, etc. This is to be discussed later in IMABI.

## The Usages of ～ては

### Usage 1: Trouble Causing Hypotheticals

The first usage of ～ては we will look at is how it is used to express situations that bring about anxiety, misgivings, uneasiness, fear, and/or inconvenience.

1. 学校がっこうの体育たいいくの運動うんどうで喘息発作ぜんそくほっさが出でては困こまります。

I'm troubled with asthma attacks happening due to exercise at school in gymnastics.

2. 老人ろうじんに見みられては困こまります。  
I'm embarrassed when I'm looked at by old people.

3. 誤解ごかいがあっては困こまりますので。  
Since it'd be worrisome if there is a misunderstanding.

4. 傷きずが残のこっては大変たいへんだ。  
Things will be difficult if there are any wounds/nicks.

5. 鹿しかにやられては元もとも子こもないので、森林しんりんの周囲しゅういを電気柵でんきさくで囲かこっています。  
Since it'd all be for naught if it were ruined by deer, we have the surroundings of the forest enclosed in an electric fence.

～ては (いけない・ならない・だめ)

We have actually already learned about this usage of ～ては when we learned about “must” and “must not” conditional phrases. As review, we will go over the basic combinations for these conditional phrases once more.

### 【Must Not】

・～てはいけない: This is used to tell someone he/she mustn't do something. It isn't simply used just to forcibly prohibit things. It could simply imply that the act in question is not favorable and that it will not be approved of by the speaker. This pattern is not typically used towards those who are higher in social status.

・～てはならない: This is used to prohibit something with a sense of duty and responsibility. Whereas the phrase above is most frequently used to prohibit and/or disapprove of the action(s) of individuals, this phrase is most frequently used to objectively state things that ought not be allowed by society at large. Because of this, it is frequently used in law and other important, official documents.

・～てはだめだ: This phrase is a more colloquial, softer variant of ～てはいけない.

6. お盆ぼんに土つちを掘ほってはいけない。  
One mustn't dig up dirt during the Festival of the Dead.

7. 私わたしたちが責任せきにんを放棄ほうきしてはならない。  
We must not abdicate our responsibility.

8. 動物どうぶつを殺ころしてはだめなのはなぜなんだろう。  
Why is it that it's bad to kill animals?



9. 見みた目めで判断はんだんしてはいけません。  
One mustn't judge based on appearance.

10. もう二度にどと戦争せんそうを起おこしてはなりません。  
We mustn't start a war ever again.

### 【Must】

・～なくてははいけない: The use of this pattern indicates that the listener ought to do something, not just because the speaker is demanding such action, but that not doing whatever it is will be unbeneficial/unfavorable for the speaker and/or listener. This is often used to make statements regarding common sense, morality, societal common wisdom, or current trends. Typically, the sentence is not interpreted as first-person unless a first-person pronoun is explicitly used.

・～なくてはならない: This pattern is used for very affirmative commands out of a sense of duty, but this “must” pattern is directed more so toward individual responsibilities rather than societal ones. This pattern is also preferred in formal writing over the phrase above.

11. なんで勉強べんきょう（を）しなくてははいけないの？  
Why do you have to study?

**Sentence Note:** The “you” in the sentence is the indirect “you” and not necessarily literally second-person. This is also the case for Ex. 12

12. 親知おやしらずは絶対ぜったいに抜ぬかなくてははいけないんですか。  
Do you have to always pull wisdom teeth?

13. 経済けいざいも国民こくみんひとりひとりも常つねに成長せいちょうを目指めざさなくてははいけないのです。  
Not just the economy but also each and every citizen must constantly aim at growth.

14. 携帯電話けいたいでんわは、私わたしにとってなくてはならない必需品ひつじゅひんだ。  
A cellphone is a necessity that one can't be without to me.

15. 台風たいふうでも出勤しゅっきんしなくてはならない会社かいしゃの体制たいせいをどう思いますか。  
What do you think about company systems that mandate (workers) be present even during typhoons?

---

### Usage 2: Condition for Strong Emotional Response

This usage of ～ては is used to express that an action/state that has come about is the reason for a strong emotional response, whether that response be a rebuke, retort, or astonishment.

16. そこまで言いわれては反論はんろんしないわけにはいかない。  
Being talked about to that degree, I have no choice but object.

17. そこまでからかわれ馬鹿ばかにされては我慢がまん（が）なりません。  
I can't stand being so ridiculed and made a fool of.

18. 筋すじの通とおらないことを平然へいぜんとやられては黙だまっていられない。  
I can't stay silent having something illogical so calmly be done to me.

19. 命いのちまで危険きけんに晒さらされては黙だまっていられない。  
I can't stay silent as even my life is put in danger.

20. 濡ぬれ衣ぎぬを着きせられては黙だまっていられない。  
I can't stay silent when I'm falsely accused.

---

### Usage 3: Repeated Action/Effect

Similar to the particle たり, ～ては is most frequently used to express the repetition (of a series of) actions. This usage is more naturally emphatic than たり due to the presence of the contrastive/emphatic は. It is most frequently used in the written language and song lyrics as it adds a layer of expressive capability that isn't necessarily indicative of standard conversation.

Grammatically speaking, the second verbal element of the pattern V+ては+V needs to be in the 連用中止形. This is the form of a verb that can at times be used as nouns. Incidentally, this pattern can be treated as a complex nominal phrase as an effect (See Ex. 28).

21. 書かいては消けし、書かいては消けし、なんとかレポートを書き上あげた。  
I wrote and erased, wrote and erased in writing up the report.

22. 走はしっては休やすみ、走はしっては休やすみ、進すすみ続つづけた。  
From running to resting, I continued forward.

23. 目めを閉とじ、息いきを吸すっては吐はく。  
Eyes closed, I inhale and exhale.

24. 人生じんせいとは波なみのように寄よせては返かえしているものである。  
Life breaks and retreats like waves.

25. あの猫ねこは、死しんでは生き返かえり、生き返かえっては死しに、まるで不死身ふじみだ。  
That cat constantly dies and comes back to life; it's as if it's immortal.

26. これまで結婚けっこんしては離婚りこんと再婚さいこんを重かさねた不二子ふじこは、なんと4よん度どもデキ婚こん！  
Fujiko, who has up till now repeatedly been married, divorced, and then remarried, has had four shotgun weddings!

27. 様々さまざまな景色けしきが現れては消きえていった。  
Various sceneries appeared and went away.

28. 鬱状態うつじょうたいになると落おち着つきがなくなり、ずっと部屋へやを歩あるき回まわったり、立たっては座すわりを繰り返かえしたり（する）などが見みられます。

When someone becomes depressed, one will see behaviors such as loss of composure, walking constantly back and forth in rooms, and repeatedly standing up and sitting down.

29. 服ふくを選えらぶときしっくりこなくて、脱ぬいでは着きてを何回なんかいも繰り返かえしてしまいます。

When I pick out clothes, I can't get it together and I end up repeatedly taking clothes off and putting them back on many times over.

**Grammar Note:** Verbs that end up being one-mora long when put in the 連用中止形 usually manifest in the て form when the “V + ては + V” is used as a noun.

30. 夕食ゆうしょくが遅おそいうえにたくさん食たべては太ふとるのは当あたり前まえだ。

On top of dinner being late, it's only natural to be gaining weight each time one eats.

---

#### Usage 4: Infallible Repeat

The purpose of this usage of ～ては is to explain how something always happens under the condition that it marks. Think of this as an amalgam of the three usages above being intended simultaneously.

31. 他たの人ひとと同おなじょうなことをしては、いつまでも成功せいこうしない。

You will not succeed forever by repeatedly doing the same things as other people.

32. 皆みなのように遊あそんでは何なににもプラスにはならないよ。

There will be no plus to messing around like everyone else.

33. コソコソしては何事なににごともうまくいかない。

Nothing will go well from constantly being sneaky about things.

34. 自分じぶんの身体からだを否定ひていしてはダイエットは成功せいこうできない。

You cannot succeed with a diet by constantly denying what your body (is trying to tell you).

35. 急せいては事ことを損そんじる。

Haste makes waste.

---

#### Usage 5: ～てはみる

The purpose of ～てはみる is to express that although one will make an attempt at doing something, one doesn't have the confidence and/or doesn't expect a good result.

36. 考かんがえてはみるよ。

I'll think about it (but I'm not so sure I'll be okay with it).

37. やってはみるけど、うまくいくかどうかは分わからない。

I'll definitely try, but I don't know whether it'll go well.

38. 一応毎回いちおうまいかいクリックしてはみるものの、一回いっかいも当あたったことありません。

I at any rate try clicking it every time, but I have yet to win even once.

39. 食事しょくじだって気を付つけてるし、色々いろいろと挑戦ちょうせんしてはみるけれど、どんなに頑張がんばってもヤセない。

I pay attention to what my meals are and I try all sorts of challenges, but not matter how much I try, I don't get slimmer.

40. 英単語えいたんごを覚おぼえてはみるけど、いつも覚おぼえられない、覚おぼえられる気がしない。

I'll try committing English vocabulary to memory, but I always can't remember, or I'm always not in the mood to be able to remember them.

---

### Usage 6: ～てはどうか

By using the pattern ～てはどうか, you can suggest that someone do something. There is an implication that the suggestion hasn't been tried yet by the speaker, thus the use of the contrastive は. In more formal speech, this is expressed as ～てはいかがですか.

41. 魔法まほうの世界せかいにきてはどう？

How about coming to the world of magic?

42. 手てを貸かすから車椅子くるまいすに乗のってはどうか。

How about if you use the while chair if I lend you my hands?

43. 捨すてる前まえに利用りようしてはどうですか。

How about using it before throwing it away?

44. 避暑地ひしょちへ足あしを延のばしてはいかがですか。

How would you like going to relax at a summer resort?

45. ご覧らんになってはいかがですか。

How would you like seeing it?

---

### Usage 7: ～てはいる

The contrastive marker は may be inserted inside ~ている to imply that one is doing something, or that what is in question is indeed the case, but that other actions/states are not being undertaken/happening.

46. ここ5ご年ねんは同おなじ男おとこと同棲どうせいしてはいるが、何なにも築きずいてはいない。

Although I've been living with the same man for the last five years, we haven't built anything (together).

47. お父とうさんは亡なくなっではいるけれど、その存在そんざいは家族かぞくのなかにずっとあるものです。

Although our father is no longer with us, his being remains forever within our family.

48. 会社かいしゃとしてはそういう意図いとでやっではいるけど、その意図いとどおりに伝つたわっているかはまた別問題べつもんだいなわけで、それはしょうがないのではないか。

As a company, it is doing so with that intent, but whether it's being transmitted as intended is a separate problem, but

49. トランプ大統領だいてうりょうが提案ていあんした予算よさんは極端きよくたんに削減さくげんされてはいるが、財政支出ざいせいししゅつは同氏どうしが大統領選だいてうりょうせんの選挙活動中せんきょかつどうちゅうにこだわった問題もんだいではなかった。

Although the budget presented by President Trump is exclusively reduced, government spending was not a problem that he fussed over during his campaigning in the presidential election.

50. 様々さまざまな舞台ぶたいで核廃絶かくはいぜつが議論ぎろんされてはいるが、各国かつこくの思惑おもわくから必かならずしも進展しんてんしているとは言いい難がたい。

Although total abolition of nuclear weapons is discussed in various settings, it is difficult to say that it is necessarily progressing due to each country's ulterior motives.

---

### Usage 8: ~ではない

As the last use of ~ては to be discussed in this lesson, we return to a grammar point that was first introduced in Lesson 9. Now that you understand how the particle は is exclusively treated as a contrast marker after the particle て, it is only natural to conclude that some degree of contrast is implied with ~ではない, which is indeed the case.

51. 実態じったいは必かならずしもそうではない。

The reality is not always so.

52. イチジクは果物ではない。

Figs are not fruit.

53. しばしば、この組織そしきは結果けっかではなく過程かていや官僚主義かんりょうしゅぎに気きをとられている。

Too often the focus of this organization has not been on results, but on bureaucracy and process.

54. どの国くにも軍事的ぐんじてき、財政的ざいせいてきな負担ふたんの不均衡ふきんこうに耐たえる必要ひつようがあるべきではない。

No nation should have to bear a disproportionate share of the burden, militarily, or financially.

55. ブラジルのテメル大統領だいとうりょうは19じゅうく日午前にちごぜん、国連総会こくれんそうかいで、北朝鮮きたちょうせんを強つよく批判ひはんするとともに、軍事力ぐんじりよくに頼たよるのではなく、各国かっこくが協力きょうりよくして平和的へいわてきな解決方法かいけつほうほうを探さぐるべきだと訴うったえました。

President Temer of Brazil on the morning of the 19<sup>th</sup> at the United Nations General Assembly, along with strongly criticizing North Korea, urged that each nation not rely on military force but rather search for peaceful solutions through mutual collaboration.

---

### **Contractions**

For Usages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 8, you may find ては contracted to ちゃ (あ) ・じゃ (あ) . There isn't any difference in meaning whether the vowel /a/ is elongated.

56. 悪わるいことはしちゃいけないよ。

You mustn't do anything bad.

57. 最初さいしょから新あたらしい勤つとめに遅おくれちゃあ大変たいへんだろう？

Wouldn't it be terrible if you were late to your new job from the very beginning?

58. 挑いどむって言いわれちゃあ、俺おれらがやんなきゃなあ。

We gotta do it if we're told to have a throw down.

59. 自滅じめつしてちゃ勝かてるわけがない！

You can't possibly when by constantly ruining yourself!

60. 優やさしいだけじゃ困こまるわ。

It'd just be trouble if (he/she) were just nice.

61. いや、呼よんじゃあまずい。

No, now's not the time to call for (him/her).

62. ワガママで自分本位じぶんほんいな男おとこじゃ (あ) 困こまる。

I'd be in a rut with a man who's selfish and egotistic.

63. いつまでも泣ないてちゃいけないね。

You mustn't cry forever.

64. 黙だまってちゃ困こまるんだよ。

[I'm/we're] going to go through a bunch of trouble with you staying quiet.

65. ぐずぐずしてちゃ駄目だめだ！

You can't just be dawdling!

## 第182課: **About:** ～について, ～に関して, & ～をめぐって

It normally doesn't take long to find differences between similar items in Japanese. Sometimes there might be certain forms and meanings of one that the other doesn't have, or there could be formality differences. These are the kinds of differences that you will learn about in regards to ～について, ～に関して, and ～をめぐって in this lesson.

### ～について & ～に関して

You have no doubt come across ～について and ～に関して and noticed that each time that they were both translated as “about”. Although this is quite true, most students don't understand the differences between them, when and when not to attach は, and how to choose an appropriate 連体形 (attribute form).

First, consider the following mistakes and corrections.

1a. 今から韓国に関して話してください。X

1b. 今から韓国について話してください。○

From now talk about Korea.

2.

A: 田山さんは家事はやりですか。

B: いえ、家事について、家内任せです。X

B: いえ、家事については、家内任せです。○

A: Does Mr. Tayama do housework?

B: No, in regards to housework, he leaves it up to his wife.

The fundamental usage of ～について and ～に関して is to emphasize an event/person as the topic/theme. Then, one states something about it. These phrases are also common in forming questions in this manner.

3. 戊辰戦争ぼしんせんそうについて教えていただけませんか。

Could you teach me about the Boshin War?

4. 彼らは貿易ぼうえきに関して議論した。

They argued about trade.

Whereas ～について emphasizes the content at hand, ～に関して includes the surroundings related to it. Also, as ～について comes from the verb 付く, it is used a lot when referring to things being tied to acts of communication via speaking, writing, thinking, etc. As you might gather just from the few

examples thus far, ～に関して is more formal and stiff. Given its nuance and formality, you should see why it was wrong in the first example.

5. 駐車違反取締り {○ についての・X に関しての} お知らせ  
Notice about the management of parking violations

6. 説明会のタイトルは水不足の問題 {○ について・X に関して} です。  
The title of this information session is about the water shortage problem.

Given the defining difference between the two, which do you suppose would be used when a student is giving a speech about his/her home country? The answer is ～について. In fact, ～について is used in the introduction of speeches because you are telling the listeners what your speech is going to be about, not what your speech/content of speech has relation with. Individual examples might be related with something else, but that's not your introduction either.

---

### **読み物: Excerpt from a Student Group Speech about 敬語**

「皆さん、こんにちは。私たちのインタビュープロジェクトのトピックは敬語です。私たちは日本の方に色々な敬語についての質問をしてみたかったので、今回日本人の敬語の考え方をテーマにして発表することにしました。インタビューした人のうち、13人が女性で、8人が男性でした。大体皆さんは若者でした。たった2人だけが35歳以上でした。主婦しゅふが8人いて、大学生が6人いて、大学院生が4人いて、仕事をしている人が4人いました。

最初に聞いてみた2つの質問は、敬語学習の時期じきについてです。…

日本人の敬語の考え方についていくつか質問しました。その中で私たちが思っていたのと違った答えだったのは、「敬語はフェイクで、敬語を使わなかったら、人ともっと近くなれる」というのでした。日本人がすべて「敬語が必要だ」という主張しゅちょうに一致いっちしていないのにととてもびっくりしました。何故現代の日本社会で敬語が必要なのかは、文化と習慣からだけだというわけではなくて、誠に尊敬の意を表している日本人の心を代表としていと思います。言語は時代とともに変わるにもかかわらず、言葉遣ことばづかいに気をつけないと、「日本人じゃない」と思われてしまうこともこの発表の結果を考えると、お分かりいただけるでしょう。敬語の使い方は日本人自身にとっても難しいけれど、この先もずっと大切に使われるであろうと言えるかもしれません。これで、敬語についての発表を終わります。」

1. What were the demographics of the Japanese people interviewed?
  2. How many people were college students?
  3. What were the first two questions about?
  4. What is the attribute form of について?
  5. What was the most surprising response?
  6. Language changes with time, but what must you always pay attention to?
  7. Translate the last two sentences.
  8. True or False: 敬語 is thought to be part of Japanese culture and tradition according to the findings of this speech.
-



In explanation these phrases are essentially interchangeable. The same kinds of words are used with them, and as far as the kinds of sentences they appear in, they're essentially parallel. So, what mainly causes problems is formality and the nuance difference mentioned earlier.

7. 人種差別主義じんしゅさべつしゅぎに {ついて・関して} の問題は重大です。

The problem against racism is serious.

8. 自由と圧制あっせいについて考察する。

To inquire about freedom and oppression.

9. 彼女の顔についていえば、本当に美しいですね。

Starting with her look, she's really beautiful, isn't she?

**Variant Usage:** Although not related, ～につき (a variant which will be mentioned again) and ～について may also mean "per" with numerical phrases. Lastly, ～につき may be like ～ため to show reasoning in formal situations where it is typically written in 漢字 as ～に就き.

10. 雪雪崩ゆきなだれに就つき電車は不通ふつうです。

Train (service) is suspended due to an avalanche.

11. 牛肉は今一ポンドにつき6ドルだよ。

Meat is six dollars per pound now.

12. 千円につき50円の手数料ですうりょうがかかります。

There is a fifty yen handling fee per one thousand yen.

---

### ～については・に関しては

は is added, as one would imagine, to raise something as the topic or thing of contrast.

13.

A: 秘書がお金を受け取ったんでしょう。

B: そのこと {については・関しては}、私は何も知りません。

A: Didn't the secretary receive the money?

B: I don't know anything about that.

14. 男性であるか女性であるか、年齢はどうかなど {については・に関しては}、それほど重要ではありません。

Whether it be about them being male or female or their age, it's not that important.

---

### Formality

You can also find these expressions as ～につきまして and ～に関しまして in more polite settings.

15. ご質問につきましてお答えします。(謙譲語)  
I will answer concerning your question.

16. この前の照会しょうかいに関しまして (Very Formal)  
Regarding your recent inquiry

**Variant Note:** について can also be seen as につき in very formal writing.

---

### Attribute Forms

～についての is the attribute form of ～について. As for ～に関して, it has the attribute forms ～に関しての and ～に関する, with the latter being more literary.

17. 政府に関しての討論とうろん。  
A debate about the government.

18. 平和に関する北朝鮮の疑惑ぎわくは日本の防衛ぼうえいを脅威きょういに晒さらしている。  
North Korean doubts on peace is threatening Japanese security.

19. 平和に関する会合を開く。  
To hold a meeting concerning peace.

**Meaning Note:** ～に関する and ～に関わる have overlapping meanings of "concerning/related to X". The first shows a connection, but the other shows a direct effect.

---

### A+の+連体形+の

In this pattern it moreover limits something in noting a condition about what is expressed by the noun. It's very similar to ～に関かんして.

20. コーヒーの冷さめたの  
Cold in regards to coffee

21. コーヒーに関しては冷たい。  
It's cold in relation to coffee.

22. オレンジの小振こぶりなの  
A comparatively small orange

**Meaning Note:** The word 小振り is normally only used in reference to things like fruits, fish, etc. However, its usage may be expanded some in speaking. Nevertheless, something like 小振りなテレビ is very weird. You should use 小型こがたのテレビ instead.

## ～をめぐる・めぐり

～を巡って, also seen as ～を巡り in more stiff, literary language, is typically written with 巡, but this is important in understanding its usage. There are some instances where it is used in a more literal sense of passing through places.

23. 四国四十八ヶ所の名所旧跡めぐりしよきゅうせきを巡る。  
To pass through the 48 famous landmarks of Shikoku.

24. 僕は被災地ひさいちを巡るつもりだ。  
I plan to go around the devastated area.

25. 鎌倉の古寺を巡ろう。  
Let's go through the Kamakura temples!

26. 名月や池を巡りて夜もすがら  
Going about the full moon and lakes, all night.  
From 芭蕉ばしょう.

**Conjugation Note:** 巡りて is the Classical form of 巡って.

It can also be used in the sense of something that had gone away has returned. In this sense, it can also be written as 廻る.

27. 季節が巡る。  
Seasons return.

28a. 血液が体内を巡るのは生きるために必要だ。

28b. 血液が体内を巡らなければ、生きることができない。  
Blood returning through the body is necessary in order to be able to live.

29. 悪運が日本に巡ってきたようだ。  
It looks like bad luck has reached Japan.

However, what will be used the most with 巡る here concerns the meaning of "surrounding" some X and describing its condition. This is translated as "concerning". In a sense you are surrounding something in an interest and describing it. One grammatical issue is that the attribute form can only be ～を巡っての when the following noun phrase Y concerns a situation and not a person. This restriction does not exist for the attribute form ～を巡った.

30. ジュリエットを巡る恋敵こいがたきだよ。  
They are rivals concerning Juliet.

31. 城しろの周りを巡れ！  
Enclose the surroundings of the castle!

32. アメリカでは憲法けんぽうを巡る問題が重なっています。  
There are problems concerning the Constitution building up in America.

33. 資金を巡って政府は暗礁あんしょうに乗り上げてしまいました。  
(The government) reached a deadlock concerning government funds.

---

### ～を巡って VS ～について・に関して

Although largely interchangeable, since ～を巡って is coming from the speaker's perspective as an onlooker, when one is actually a person concerned with something, ～について・に関して should be used instead.

34. 日本の将来 {～を巡って・～について}、有識者ゆうしきしゃによる討論会とうろんかいが行われました。

There was a debate opened by experts concerning the future of Japan.

35. 健康保険 {○ について・X を巡って}、論議を進めたいと思います。

I would like to proceed with an argument/discussion about health insurance.

36. 来年の企画 {○ について・○ に関して・X をめぐって} 話し合ってください。

Please talk together about next year's project.

## 第208課: The Particleこそ

こそ is a rather straightforward particle to understand, but its usage is a little tricky.

### The Fundamentals ofこそ

The first instances ofこそ students learn about are set phrases like こちらこそ (likewise), 今度こそ (surely next time), and 今年こそ (surely next year). However, even these set phrases can get messed up.

- 1a. 今年こそ危機に瀕する言語の重要性が分かるようになりました。X

- 1b. 今年になってはじめて危機に瀕する言語の重要性が分かるようになりました。○  
I've finally understood for the first time this year the importance of endangered languages.

- 2a. 彼こそその努力すれば、東大に行けるでしょう。X

- 2b. 彼ほどの努力をすれば、東大に行けるでしょう。○

If you strive like him, you'll be able to go to Tokyo University.

こそ strongly emphasizes what precedes it similarly to the words "certainly" and "indeed." It can be seen after nouns (especially those concerning people), time phrases, Verb+て, and the 連用形 of verbs.

3. 企業家精神こそ最もリスクが小さな道である。

The entrepreneurial spirit is certainly the least risky road to take.

4. 物腰こそ慇懃いんぎんだが、根は黒い。

His demeanor is indeed courteous, but his true nature is mean.

5. 明日こそ鳥は羽ばたく。  
The birds will certainly flap tomorrow.

6. 今こそ始めましょう。  
Let's get started now!

7. 今度こそうまくいきますよう！  
You'll certainly do better next time!

8. まさかの時の友こそ真の友。  
A friend in need is a friend indeed.

9. 今年こそ日本へ行ってみよう。  
This year, indeed, let's try going to Japan.

10. このひどい子宮から逃げようと失敗したが、今度こそこの地獄を切り抜けて自由を手に入れよう！  
I failed in trying to escape this damned uterus, but next time I will definitely come clear out of this hell and attain freedom!

**Sentence Note:** Someone like Stewie from Family Guy would say something like this.

11. 健全な国民が存在してこそ国家が成り立つ。  
A nation is born with the existence of a healthy citizen body.

12. 喜びこそすれ、怒ることはない。  
There's nothing to be angry about when you're joyous.

**Grammar Note:** ～こそすれ・こそなれ・こそであれ involve the 已然形 of the verbal element that followこそ.

13. 褒めこそすれ、非難することはない。  
She does speak highly (of others), but she never criticizes.

13. 愚かな女でこそあれ、良妻賢母だなんて、とんでもない。  
So long as the woman is a fool, "good wife, wise mother" means nothing.

14. 毒にこそなれ薬にはならない。  
Do more harm than good.

**Word Note:** When you take outこそ in にこそなれ, you get the archaic copulaなり.

Becauseこそ is so emphatic, sentences with it often end in～だ, ～(よ)う, ～べきだ, etc. It is used a lot, but it is more common in the written language. Reasons for this include sentences like the last where traditional grammar holds on. In the spoken language, it tends to be used in statements by politicians and what not, and a few of the sentences above could definitely be used as slogans.

The particle **こそ** can also be paired before or after **を**, but this is optional and quite uncommon. It may also be paired with the particles **に**, **へ**, **で**, **と**, **から**, in which case it will always be preceded by these particles.

15. 山田氏 { (を) こそ・こそ (を) } 知事に推薦したい。  
We want to recommend Mr. Yamada to the governor.

16. 日本にこそおいしい食べ物がありますよ。  
There is indeed delicious food in Japan.

17. 今でこそ、嘘がつけるが、あのときは、どうもつけなかった。  
Now I can absolutely lie, but at that time, I couldn't whatsoever.

Unlike using **が**, which sounds like the speaker is picking one thing as the focus, **こそ** emphasizes this “focus” as the sole thing fit for the situation. It is often used in sentences where one quality is highlighted in the first clause with **こそ**, but then it gets negated. When this gets flipped around, the second clause with **こそ** shows what’s actually the case.

18. 「オバマ大統領の支持率が低いですね。」 「いえ、違いますよ。支持率こそ伸び悩んでいます、何かやってくれそうですよ。」  
“President Obama’s approval rating is low, isn't it?” No, you’re wrong. Though his approval rating may very well be lagging behind, he seems like he’s going to do something for us”.

19. お金は悪の元とは言いが、お金の金銭欲こそ悪の元である。  
They say money is the root of evil, but it’s the lust for money that is the root of evil.

Using **～こそが** instead of **～こそ** can’t be easily explained. If a noun phrase being modified by **こそ** is the subject of the sentence, grammatically speaking, there is nothing wrong with using **～こそが**. If the particle is dropped, it may be because other things in your sentence are just off for the tone to work.

20. 去勢と卵巣除去こそが犬の数の急増を防ぐのです。猫の場合は、毒を加えたミルクで十分なはずでしょう。  
Spaying and neutering will definitely prevent the rapid increase of the dog population. As for cats, poison laced milk should do it.

## ～からこそ & ～からこそ

"A+からこそ+B" and "A+からこそ+B" are mostly interchangeable, translating roughly as "indeed it is because." Both are used when the speaker compares the situation with past experience or knowledge and can't think of anything but reason A for result B. A statement of reason, with the addition of **こそ**, becomes a declaration of what the speaker perceives to be fact.

21. だからこそ、強い日本を作るために、憲法をなおそう！  
Precisely because of this, in order to create a strong Japan, let us fix the constitution!

22. あなたのことを思って {いるから・いれば} こそ、こう言うのです。It's precisely because I'm thinking about you that I say this.

23. たとえ過去に犯罪を犯したとしても、人のために全力を {尽くすから・尽くせば} こそ、神様に報われるのです。

Even if you've committed a crime in the past, it is precisely because you are giving your all to the better of people that you will be rewarded by God.

24. 愛して {いるから・いれば} こそ、別れなければならないのです。

It is exactly because I love you that we must separate.

25. 気が {短いからこそ・短ければこそ} 、喧嘩してはなりません。

It is precisely because of your short temper that you mustn't get into an argument.

26. 充実した毎を送れるのは、心身が健康 {だから (こそ) ・であればこそ} だ。

The reason why I am able to live fulfilled each day is the fact that my mind and body are healthy.

27. その発想があったからこそ、道子は同棲生活を取りあえず清算して山岳拠点に身を投ずることができた。

It was precisely because Michiko had that conception that she was for now able to throw herself to the base in the mountains and end her cohabitation lifestyle.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

**Word Note:** 身を投ずる = 身を投じる.

**Grammar Note:** ～ばこそ has become more literary, and it is usually not used by the younger generations. Inverting the sentences can cause grammatical problems. When ～からこそだ ends the sentence, it is often the case that こそ just gets dropped. Sometimes, keeping it can make the sentence sound unnatural, especially in the spoken language.

Examples with the format A {から・ば} こそ B can be reworded to BのはA {から・ば} こそだ if the context is resultative, but in contradictory contexts, this is not possible. However, when you can reword to BのはAからこそだ, it is because A is expressing a positive cause/reason. Negative situations don't go.

---

### ～ばこそ: 一般条件

～ばこそ may be used in showing a general condition. This is simply based on the fact that you are using the conditional particle ば in the pattern. As stated above, the context does not involve contradictory clauses. ば functions as a general condition, and the situation is in regards to knowledge, morals, or logic of some sort. The pattern becomes unnatural when the situation is already a defined condition of the past.

28. 政府のことを {思ったからこそ ○・思えばからこそX}、腹を立てたんじゃないか。

It's surely because you thought about the government that you got mad, no?

29. 政府のことを思えばこそ、腹を立てることも多い。

Of course, when you think about the government, you often get mad.

30. 親友の友だちが励まして {くれるから・くれればこそ}、挫折せずに生きていけるんだ。

Because I certainly have a true friend to encourage me on, I can live on without setbacks.

"A+ {から・ば} こそ+B" are used to express personal declaration, but when one is making a statement about objective fact regarding the laws of nature, then they become unnatural.

31. 本当に信じていればこそ、こうして頼んでいるのです。

Because I truly believe in you, I am asking you this.

32. 岡田さんのことを思うからこそ、本当のことを言うべきでしょう？

Because I truly think about Okada-san, should I tell him/her the truth?

33a. 火星にも引力が {あるからこそ・あればこそ}、物体は地表へと落下する。X

33b. 火星にも引力があるから、物体は地表へ（と）落下する。○

Since there is also gravity on Mars, objects will fall to the surface.

34. 表題作の「光と影」も、まさに医家でなければもてない眼差しと、作家でなければ見抜くことができない眼差しがあったればこそと、私は確信している。

Along with the title work "Light and Shadow", I'm confident that he had the eye that only a doctor could have and the eye with which he could see through things being a novelist.

From 光と影 by 渡辺淳一 in the 解説 by 小松伸六.

**Grammar Note:** あったれば = あれば.

## ～てこそ

AてこそB is used when the speaker is evaluating or persuading the listener based on experience/social wisdom/morals/ethics and a positive B coming about. Because there is a condition A, a positive B naturally/necessarily comes about. B must be some noun (of condition), adjective, potential or passive phrase, all of which are non-volitional. B can't be a phrase that shows the speaker's/your volition.

35. 見知らぬ人を快く歓迎してこそ、誰にも熱く歓迎されるのです。

As you cheerfully welcome strangers, you will be warmly welcomed by anyone.

36. 身を捨ててこそ浮ぶ瀬もあれ。(Set Phrase)

Literally: Just as throw your own self away, there are also rapids for your body to float in.

Risk all and gain all.



37. この山中に暮らしをしてこそ、完璧に平等な理想の社会を築くことができるのではないか。人間らしい叫び声を上げることができてこそ、革命家たり得るはずなのだ。  
Isn't it not possible to build a perfectly impartial society by living within the mountains? It should be possible to become a revolutionist by simply giving a human shout.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

38. 原因があり条件があつてこそ現象としてとらえられるのだが、条件は刻一刻と変化する。

One can grasp things as phenomena so long as there is a cause and condition, but conditions change moment by moment.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

**Grammar Note:** たり得る is a combination of たり (a classical copula) and 〜得る (showing potential). It is equivalent to であることができる。

All instances of 〜てこそ may be replaced with 〜てはじめて, but this doesn't mean that 〜てはじめて is always interchangeable with 〜てこそ. Just like 〜ばこそ, 〜てこそ cannot be used with some past or individual event with a defined condition.

39. 君と会ってはじめて本当の愛の意味が分かった気がする。

Since meeting you, I feel like I've understood the meaning of true love for the first time.

AてこそB is interchangeable with A {から・ば} こそB whenever the situation is a defined, resultative condition, the likes of which are seen with から・の で. However, if the situation is hypothetical, you should use 〜てからこそ・ばこそ. If it is a situation that could be defined as hypothetical but not necessarily, paraphrasing 〜てこそ out with 〜てからこそ, 〜ばこそ, 〜ば, or 〜から would be fine.

40a. 全力を尽く {してこそ・せばこそ・してはじめて}、神様に報われるのです。○

40b. 全力を尽くせば、神様に報われるのです。X

It is precisely because of you giving your all that you will be rewarded by God.

41a. 人々がこの地球を守ってこそ、人類はサバイバルが可能だ。○

41b. 人々がこの地球を {守ってからこそ・守ればこそ}、人類はサバイバルが可能だ。○41c. 人々がこの地球を守るから、人類はサバイバルが可能だ。X/△

So long as people protect this earth, humanity has the potential to survive.

42. 一生懸命 {頑張ってこそ・頑張るからこそ・頑張ればこそ・頑張るから・頑張れば}、成功するのだ。

You'll succeed if I try all my might. Of course, by now you should realize that there are minor nuance changes in switching between the options, but at least you know what a situation looks like in which all are fine.

## 第209課: わけだ

The noun 訳 when read as わけ can be translated as “conclusion from reasoning”, but it is not to be confused with the reading やく, which means “translation.”

1. そのわけは未いまだ説明かいめいされていない。  
The reason for that has still yet to be clarified.
2. なるほど、そんなわけで、金子かねこは帰国きこくしたのか。  
I see, so that's why Kaneko returned to Japan.
3. あいつはいつも訳わけの分わからないことばかりやってるよ。  
That guy always does a bunch of nonsense.
4. ロケット団だんがピカチュウを追おっている理由りゆうはこういいうわけですか。  
This is the reasoning for Team Rocket chasing Pikachu.
5. てなわけで、ごきげんよう！

With that, have a nice day!

**Contraction Note:** てなわけで comes from というようなわけで. It is equivalent to “with that being said” and is very fitting in this example sentence in concluding the conversation, but it is rather interchangeable with the phrase ということで. Just as in English, either of these two phrases are used in making transitions.

6. 訳わけもなく、彼かれは机つくえを壊こわした。  
Without any reason, he broke the desk.
7. ちゅうわけで、今夜こんやも行いこうぜ～。  
With that, let's go tonight too!

**Contraction Note:** ちゅう is a contraction of という, and together, ちゅうわけで is yet another means of saying “so with that...”

訳だ, most frequently spelled as わけだ, is multifaceted in meaning, but its fundamental meaning is to express reasoning which has come about from having thought along the logic or reasoning from one certain circumstance which led the speaker to yet another circumstance. Meaning, there is a known fact that leads to a reason or cause for which one draws a conclusion. In doing so, this pattern draws parallels with はずだ and ことになる, but as is always the case with interrelated grammar points, it will be necessary for us to delve into when and how these patterns are ever interchangeable.

## Affirmation vs. Inference

All three of these patterns demonstrate an inevitable conclusion that the speaker makes after having thought things through logically. However, whereas わけだ and ことになる can be viewed as stating a matter as logically

based established fact, はずだ more so states induction with a high degree of confidence—not quite fact.

8. このガス雲うんは、ブラックホールの潮汐力ちょうせきりょくによって破壊はかいされ、降着円盤こうちゃくえんばんに衝突しょうとつするはずです。

This gas cloud should be destroyed by the tidal force of the black hole and collide with the accretion disk.

9. 水蒸気すいじょうきを含ふくんだ空気くうきが上昇じょうしょうし、雪雲ゆきぐもを作つくと、雪ゆきが降ふるわけです。

When air filled with water vapor rises and creates snow clouds, it snows.

10. 乱層雲らんそううんは、横よこに広ひろがっているので、小雨こさめが長ながく降り続つづくことになる。

The nimbostratus stretches horizontally, and so the light rain will continue to fall for a long time.

わけだ is at its heart an expression that decisively demonstrates a logical conclusion based on some premise. はずだ, on the other hand, does not assert knowledge of the truth as it only infers a conclusion based on the extent of information at the speaker's disposal. It is a "should" and nothing more. The predicates before わけだ and はずだ, thus, have a fundamental difference. For the former, the predicate is known as fact and is in response to why it is so. For the latter, the predicate is not known to be fact, but its validation is what is being set in motion. Their focal points may share some similarity in showing a conclusion, but *hazu da* はずだ places emphasis on the speaker's high confidence about how something ought to be the case while わけだ places emphasis on what has come about from following a logical path of reasoning. Both, however, are used in a very explanatory sense. They simply differ in the nature of the explanation: fact or conjecture.

**Conjugation Note:** Because わけだ is composed of a noun, there is nothing special about how it attaches to other parts of speech.

## Objectiveness or Lack Thereof

Both わけだ and はずだ are actually subjective in nature despite わけだ emphasizing what the speaker feels to be established fact, but this is exactly how both demonstrate subjectivity. Of course, はずだ is by far the most subjective in nature. Even if the statement which the speaker is trying to make with はずだ is based on facts, it is at the very most inference that is hoping to squeeze agreement from the listener. This is so much so that if that if what ends up being the case is different than what expected and asserted with はずだ, suspicion as to whether said realization is true is inferred. This never happens with わけだ.

11. 普通ふつうなら固体こたいは液体えきたいに沈しずむんですが、これってなんで浮ういてるの？

Usually, solids sink in liquids, but why is this floating?

12. 氷こおりは水みずより軽かるいので、固体こたいとはいえ水みずに浮うくわけです。

Ice is lighter than water, and so although it's a solid, that's why it floats in water.

Where does ことになる fall in all this? It is quite interchangeable with わけだ as it too expresses how an inevitable conclusion is brought about by following logic, fact, and or the course of things, but unlike わけだ, it is extremely objective in nature. In summary, all three patterns show conclusions based on logic, but they differ in objectivity and in the nature of their claims.

13. 形かたちあるものは全すべて壊こわれるわけですね？

Things with form must all go to pieces, right?

14. アセトアルデヒドは、有害物質ゆうがいぶっしつなので、さらに炭酸たんさんガスと水分すいぶんに分解ぶんかいされることになります。

Because acetaldehyde is a toxic substance, it becomes further decomposed to carbonic acid and water.

As far as わけだ is concerned, its fundamental meaning being to express reasoning, which has come about from having thought along the logic or reasoning from one certain circumstance which led the speaker to yet another circumstance, is not so difficult to comprehend, but there are issues that arise when looking further into the relationship between the two circumstances intrinsically implied with わけだ. At times, what わけだ attaches to shows reason/cause, and at other times it shows result, which at first glance seem to be contradictory. In order to reconcile this, it is necessary to separate the individual functions of わけだ according to the flow of awareness of the speaker as this will help determine the relationship meant by whatever two circumstances are linked with it.

The reason for why all this is necessary is because わけだ is intrinsically subjective to some degree. The subjective nature lies in the fact that although it may be based on established fact/logic, these facts and or logic are being represented with the speaker's personal point of view. Depending on where one's flow of thought goes, one's thoughts may levitate toward to either the reason/cause or the effect of the logical conclusion clause that わけだ attaches to.

## Showing Result/Effect

When showing result/effect, わけだ can be associated with claims that refer to an unconfirmed event in the past as well as claims based on established fact and as of yet established 'fact.' Choosing はずだ or ことになる instead depends on the objectivity you wish to give to the result, but it is worth noting that ことになる doesn't work when the result has already happened.

15. フランスはフィンランドと1いち時間じかんの時差じさがあるから、ホテルには日本時間につぼんじかんの15じゅうご時じごろに着つくわけだ。

Because there is a one-hour time difference between France and Finland, (I) will arrive at the hotel around 3 PM JST.

16. そんなに市場いちばに出回でまわってるんだったら、果たしかに乱獲らんかくとかで5ご年後ねんごに姿すがたを完全かんぜんに消けしてしまうわけですね。

If it's circulating that much in the markets, then it'll definitely completely disappear five years from now due to overfishing and what not.

17. 2に時間遅じかんおくれでシアトルを出発しゅっぱつしたので、2に時間遅じかんおくれでハワイに到着とうちゃくしたわけです。

(I/We) departed Seattle with a two-hour delay, which is why we arrived at Hawaii two-hours late.

18. 2に時間遅じかんおくれでシドニーを出発しゅっぱつしたので、およそ2に時間遅じかんおくれでジャカルタに到着とうちゃくしたはずです。

(They) departed Sydney with a two-hour delay, and so they should have arrived at Jakarta approximately two-hours late.

19. 執筆者しっぴつしゃの方かたは、ベンチャーキャピタル出身しゅっしんの公認会計士こうにんかいけいしなので、道理どうりで内部事情ないぶじじょうに詳しくわしいわけです。

The author (of this) is a certified public accountant from a venture capital, which is no wonder why he is well-informed about internal state of affairs.

20. 岡田おかださんは韓国かんこくで5ご年ねんくらい働はたらいていたので、そもそも韓国かんこくの内部事情ないぶじじょうに詳しくわしいはずです。

Mr. Okada had worked in South Korea for around five years, and so he should know about the internal state of South Korea anyway.

21. ところで、最近農薬さいきんのうやくを使つかい始はじめたよね。で、もう害虫がいちゅうがつかない {わけですか・ことになりますか} 。

By the way, you've started to use agrochemicals, right? Will the pests no longer stick?

**Grammar Note:** The question form of はずだ does not exist due to the strong subjective nature it has in expressing the speaker's thoughts of what something "should" be.

## Showing Reason/Cause

If the reason/cause is known from established fact, then はずだ can't be used, but if the reason/cause deals with something that one hasn't gone out and confirmed, then either can be used. It's just that わけだ would be somewhat subjective whilst still presenting the matter as fact.

22. 部屋へやがとっても静しずかですね。あ、みんなが休憩きゅうけいに入はいったわけですね。

The room is very quiet isn't it? Ah, everyone's gone on break.

23. 今年ことしは、ブドウの出来できが去年きょねんと比くらべてやや悪わるかったんですけど、ま、冷夏れいかだったわけですね。

This year, the quality of the grapes was bad compared to last year, but, well, it was a cold summer.

24. 今年ことしのトマトの出来できが悪わるかったです。まあ、本来ほんらいこの夏なつも冷夏れいかなかったはずなので、仕方しかたがないですね。

This year's tomato quality was bad. Well, this summer was originally supposed to be a cold summer, so it can't be helped.

25. 台風たいふうが近ちかづいているわけですが、近所きんじょの周まわりは雨あめが降ふったり、青空あおぞらが見みえたり、嫌いやな雲くもが流ながれてきたりしてて、天気てんきが落おち着きません。

It's because the typhoon is approaching but, in and around the neighborhood, it rains, lets up to see the blue sky, then awful looking clouds flood in...back and forth. The weather won't calm down.

**Grammar Note:** ことになる is incapable of being used to show reason/cause. It is limited to show result/effect in the most objective of situations.

## Acknowledgment of Truth

When acknowledging the truth of something, わけだ is interchangeable with はずだ, but the nuance changes to showing what something ought to be, which isn't surprising. However, for every "ought" you can think of, there are just as many situations that are in fact true which you can then acknowledge with わけだ, and these situations can overlap a lot.

26. 「日本にほんにいつ来きたの」「2に歳さいのとき」「はあ？じゃ、日本にほんに住すんで20にじゅう年ねん？道理どうりで日本語にほんごが流暢りゅうちょうなわけだね」

"When did you come to Japan?" "When I was two years old." "What? Then, you've lived in Japan for 20 years? Well no wonder you're fluent in Japanese."

27. 開あかないわけだよ。そもそも違ちがう鍵かぎを渡わたしたんだから。  
It won't open. That's because I handed you the wrong key in the first place.

28. 少子高齢化しょうしこうれいかが進すすんでいいる。このため、健康保険料けんこうほけんりょうは高たかくなっているわけだ。  
The decreasing birthrate and aging population is advancing. Because of this, health insurance has gone up.

29. 「いくら一生懸命勉強いっしょうけんめいべんきょうしても、まだ英語えいごの能力のうりょくが足りません。」「要ようするに、英語えいごを話はなすのが下手へただというわけでしょう。」「

"No matter how much I study, my English skills are still lacking." "In short, you're not good at speaking English, right?"

If there is no chance of speculation from not having verified the claim oneself, はずだ can't be used. It doesn't make sense to make an inference about something you've already observed.

30. 「岸本きしもとさんは会社かいしゃでクビになったらしいよ」「だからずっと家いえに籠こもってるわけね」

"It seems that Mr. Kishimoto was fired at his company. "So that's why he's confined himself at home this whole time."

はずだ would not make sense in this sentence because the second speaker has observed Kishimoto being in his home the whole time.

## Restating Fact

Normally, when restating fact, you're already stating something without inferring the details. Now, you might restate this said fact from your point of view, in which case わけだ is most certainly the choice pattern to use. If instead of being from your point of view you are merely (re)stating the natural course of things from an objective stance, ことになる will be your friend.

31. 確たしかに、火災かさいの後あと、目めが痛いたいと訴うったえて出でる者ものが多いおかった。あの、音道おとみちとしか話はなそうとしなかったアルバイトの娘むすめも、目めが痛いたみ、黒くろい煙けむりが出でたと言いつていた。あの時ときには、まさかこんな妙みょうな事件じけんになるなんて、考かんがえてもみなかった。それが、男おとこが勝手かってに燃もえ出だしたというし、時限装置じげんそうちは見みつかるし、お陰かげで俺おれは、お嬢様じょうさまと楽たのしい毎日まいにちを過すごすことになっちまったってわけだ。

There were certainly many people who came forward claiming that their eyes hurt after the fire. That girl, who was a part-time worker and only tried to speak Otomichi, also claimed that her eyes hurt and that there was black smoke. At that time, I never even thought that this would become such a strange case. That...a man would just catch himself on fire, that a timing device would be found, and thanks to all this, I've ended up spending every pleasant day with the lady (detective).

32. 夫おっとと浮気相手うわきあいての会話かいわの録音ろくおんは不貞行為ふていこういの存在そんざいを示しめす証拠しょうこになります。

Recording of one's husband and lover becomes proof of the existence of unfaithful acts.

As stated above, if there is no chance of subjective inference, then はずだ is inappropriate. However, if there is room for such inference like in the last sentence, then it is fine using it when restating fact.

## Merely Stating What's What

わけだ also happens to be frequently used with statements that the speaker deems to be common sense/well-known establish fact, so much so that it can

viewed as a final particle. In fact, this is so prevalent that わけ by itself at the end of a sentence is almost as common as hearing other final particles like よ or ね.

33. 口くちに入入れた瞬間しゅんかん、もう旨味うまみが口くちに広ひろがるわけ。  
The moment you put it in your mouth, the taste spreads through your mouth.

34. そこが男おとこらしいわけよ。  
That right there is what's manly.

35. こうして二人ふたりは結婚けっこんして幸しあわせに暮くらししたわけです。  
And so the two married and lived happily.

## 第210課: わけではない, わけがない, わけにはいかない

In the previous lesson, we learned all about the phrase わけだ and its relation with similar phrases. What we did not do is cover what happens when we use this in the negative. This is because there are three possible options that are all different from each other in their own unique ways. These phrases are as follows:

- わけではない
- わけがない
- わけにはいかない

Because the situations they are respectively used in are quite different, it will be very important to hone down on these differences in order to properly use them.

### わけではない

わけではない is, simply put, the basic negation of わけだ. Therefore, it may be used in all five usages mentioned in the previous lesson. Therefore, context will be necessary to show whether it is used in negating reason, cause/effect, acknowledge, or (re)stating fact. It is simply translated as "it is not that..." However, despite showing negation, it can be viewed as not being a 100% denial.

1. 絶対ぜったいに反対はんたい (だ) というわけではないんですが、もうすこし考かんがえてみたいんです。

It's not that I'm absolutely against it, but I would like to think about it a little more.

2. 「僕ぼくは何なんとも言えないんですけれど、根本ねもとさんも賛成さんせいでしょか」「いや、うちもその意見いけんには全面的ぜんめんてきに賛成さんせい (だ) というわけじゃありません」

"I can't really say anything, but are you too in support of it, Mr. Nemoto?"

"No, it's not that I'm wholeheartedly in support of the opinion either."

3. 彼氏かれしの考かんがえてることがすべて分かるわけじゃないが、おおよそは分かるよ。



It's not that I understand everything my boyfriend is thinking, but I generally do.

4. 「ベジタリアンということは、肉にくや魚さかなは全然食ぜんぜんたべないということですか。」 「いろいろなベジタリアンがいますが、私わたしの場合はあいはいは、全然ぜんぜん食たべないというわけではありません。魚さかなは食たべることがありますから。つまり、魚菜食主義者ぎょさいしょくしゅぎしゃなんです。ペスクタリアンとも言いますよ。」

"Is being a vegetarian not eating any meat or fish?" "There are many kinds of vegetarians, but as for myself, it's not that I don't completely eat (meat). That's because I eat fish. In other words, I follow pescaterianism. You can also call me a pescatarian."

5. お酒さけはあまり飲のみませんが、飲のめないわけじゃないですよ。  
I don't really drink alcohol, but it's not that I can't drink it.

6. 全すべてが私わたしの責任せきにん（だ）というわけではありません。  
That doesn't mean it's entirely my fault.

7. そこまで本気ほんきで英語えいごを勉強べんきょうしたいわけではない。  
It's not that I want to seriously study English to that extent.

8. 梅雨つゆの頃ころはよく降ふりますが、毎日降まいにちふるわけではありません。  
In the rainy season it frequently rains, but it's not the case that it rains every day.

9. 死しぬ気きでやっても本当ほんとうに死しぬわけじゃないよ。  
Even if you did it with the will to die, it's not that you will really die.

10. まだ結婚けっこんしていませんが、結婚けっこんしたくないわけでもないんです。  
I'm not married yet, but it's not that I don't want to get married.

11. ホタテのこういうことを知しりたかったわけじゃないのよ。  
It's not the case at all that I wanted to know this about scallops.

12. 「この患者かんじゃは全然助ぜんぜんたすからないんですか。」 「いいえ、全然助ぜんぜんたすからないというわけではありませんが、難むずかしいでしょう。」  
"Can this patient not be saved?" "No, well it's not the case that he can't be helped at all, but it'll be difficult."

13. 恋こいを知しらないわけじゃないし、逃にげてるわけでもない。  
It's not that I don't know love, and it's also not even that I'm running away.

14. 「智君さとしくんのこと、好きじゃないの？」 「好きじゃないってわけじゃないけど…」  
"Do you not like Satoshi?" "It's not that I don't like him, but..."

15. 悪わるいことをしたわけじゃない。  
It's not that I did something bad.

## わけがない

わけがない is used when you are negating the commonsense reasoning behind something being right/correct/impossible. In its own way, it is very similar to phrases ありえない and 信じられない. It can be translated as “there’s no way that...”

16. ビッグフットが存在そんざいするわけがない。  
There’s no way that Big Foot exists.

17. 六月ろくがつに雪ゆきが降ふるわけがない。  
There’s no way that it will/can snow in June.

18. ペンギンは絶滅ぜつめつするわけがないでしょう。  
Surely there’s no way that penguins will go extinct.

19. 偶然ぐうぜんなわけがないでしょう。  
Surely there’s no way it was a coincidence.

20. 英語えいごはおろか、中国語ちゅうごくごも学まなべるわけがないでしょう。  
English is one thing, but there’s no way that I could learn Chinese, no?

21. 黙だまって見送りおくることなど出来るわけがないでしょう。  
There’s no way I can just stay silent and see (him) off, you know.

22. 皆みんなに信用しんようされるわけがないでしょう。  
There’s definitely no way that (he) would be trusted by everyone, you know.

23. 病院びょういんを退院たいいんして1いち日にちも過すぎていないんだから、旅行りょこうに行いけるわけなんてないよ。  
It hasn’t even been a day since (he) left the hospital, so there’s absolutely no way he’d go traveling.

24. 稚魚ちぎょはたとえば小ちいさい池いけだったら、全部駆除ぜんぶくじょできるのかもしれないけど、琵琶湖びわこみたいなところでは完全かんぜんに駆除くじょできるわけがないでしょう。  
If say it were a small pond, you could exterminate all the juvenile fish, but if it were a large place like Lake Biwa, there’s no way that you could possibly completely exterminate them.

25. いくら頭あたまがよい人ひとでも、一年間いちねんかで広東語かんとんごがマスターできるわけがありません。  
No matter how smart someone is, there’s no way one could master Cantonese in year.

## わけにはいかない

When stating that an action is not reasonable/proper for obvious reasons and cannot be done as an effect, you use わけにはいかない. It can be translated as “there’s no way...can.../...cannot afford to...”

26. まだまだ終了報告出しゅうりょうほうこくだしてないから、帰かえるわけにはいかないだろう。

I still haven't done the end of the day report, so there's no way I can go home.

27. 曖昧あいまいな態度たいどを取とるわけにはいきません。

You cannot afford to take a vague attitude.

28. 風邪かぜを引ひいてしまったんですが、今日きょうは大事だいじな会議かいぎがあるので、休やすむわけにはいきません。

I caught a cold, but because I have an important meeting today, I can't afford to take the day off.

29. 車くるまで来きちゃったから、お酒飲さけのむわけにはいかん。

I accidentally came by car, so there's no way I can drink.

30. 彼氏かれしが作つくった料理りょうりは辛からすぎても、食たべないわけにはいかない。

Even if my boyfriend's cooking is too spicy, there's no way I can just not eat it.

31. 休やすみだからといって、勉強べんきょうしないわけではない。

I can't afford to not be studying just because we're on holiday.

32. 義父母ぎふぼが訪たずねてくるから、掃除そうじしないわけにはいかないですね。

My in-laws are coming to visit, so I can't afford not to clean.

33. 山口やまぐちさんも一緒いっしょに来こてくださるわけにはいきませんか。

Is there no way that you can't come with us, Mr. Yamaguchi?

34. 冬ふゆだからって、毎日髪まいにちかみを洗あらわないわけにはいかない。

I can't afford to not wash my hair every day just because it's winter.

35. 日本語教育にほんごきょういくは理想りそうばかり言いっても現実げんじつを無視むしするわけにはいきません。

Even if Japanese education only speaks of ideals, we can't afford to ignore reality.

36. 負まけるわけにはいかないよ。

I can't afford to lose!

37. 疲つかれたからってやめるわけにはいかない。

You can't afford to quit just because you got tired.

38. そうかといって、信しんじるわけにはいかない。

Even so, you can't afford to believe (that).

39. 「明日あすまで待まっていただけないでしょうか」「ええ、でも、急いそいでいるので、長ながい間待あいだまつわけにはいかないんです」

"Could you wait until tomorrow?" "Yes, but, since I'm in a hurry, I can't afford to wait long."

40. 断ことわるわけにはいけないので、命令めいれいに従したがおう。  
I cannot afford to refuse, and so I'll follow the order.

## 第211課: The Particle ながら II: ながら (も) & ながらに (して)

In this second installment concerning the particle ながら, we learn about its second most common usage: showing contradiction.

### Contradiction

The particle ながら, when used to show contradiction, follows the same restraints on clauses as when it shows simultaneous action. This is because the contradiction involves the same subject and because the two parts of the contradiction still happen in the same time span.

Unlike its primary usage to show non-contradictory simultaneous action, this use of ながら can attach to pretty much anything. You can find it directly after nouns, adjectival nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and verbs.

	Affirmative	Negative
Nouns	N (であり) + ながら (も)	Nではない + ながら (も)
Adjectival Nouns	Adj. N (であり) + ながら (も)	Adj. Nではない + ながら (も)
Adjectives	Adj. + ながら (も)	Drop /i/ + くない + ながら (も)
Adverbs	Adv. + ながら (も)	
Verbs	Stem + ながら (も)	V + ない → ず・ぬ + ながら (も)

The productivity of all these combinations will not be equal in the real world. ながら (も) is most frequently used with verbs, and for everything else it may be follow, creative license is required. Due to the fact that this pattern is more so employed in the written language, you will need to explore this grammar on a case-by-case basis. There are many set phrases that utilize this, some of which are very important. For instance, 残念だ means "to be unfortunate," and when used with ながら as 残念ながら, it's used to mean "unfortunately..."

The addition of the particle も in this expression is only used for emphatic purposes. As such , normally, ながら and ながらも are interchangeable.

1. 彼女かのじょはあんなにいろいろ苦労くろうしながらも、それを苦くにしていない。  
Even though she's going through that many troubles, she isn't worrying about them.

2. 湯沢ゆざわさんは大企業だいきぎょうの社長しゃちょう (であり) ながら (も)、静しずかな落おち着ついた物腰ものごしが印象的いんしょうてきでした。

Though Mr. Yuzawa is the president of a large corporation, his quiet and calm demeanor is impressive.

3. 真由子まゆこは初心者しょしんしゃ（であり）ながら（も）、潜在せんざい能力のうりょくはかなりあると思おもいます。

Even though Mayuko is a beginner, I think that her skills are considerably good.

4. しかしながら、予算案よさんあんはまだ修正しゅうせいの余地よちがある。

Nevertheless, the budget still has plenty of room for improvement.

5. すでに一月いちがつを過すごしてしまったのですが、遅おそまきながら初詣はつもうでに出でかけました。

I've already let January pass, but I belatedly went out to my first shrine visit of the New Year.

6. 讃岐さぬきうどんと言いいながらも、ほとんどは外国産がいこくさんの小麦こむぎで作つくられている。

Although we call it "Sanuki Udon," most of it is made with foreign manufactured wheat.

7. 彼女かのじょはダイエットしていると言いいながら（も）ケーキばかり食たべている。

Although she says that she's on a diet, all she eats is cake.

8. 恥はずかしながら、自己紹介じこしょうかいです。

As embarrassing as this is, this is my self-introduction.

**Form Note:** Note that with the adjective 恥ずかしい, the final /i/ is dropped.

9. { 我われ・自分じぶん } ながら情なさけない。

This is deplorable even if I do say so myself.

10. ゾンビーは死しんでいながらも、生前せいぜんと同おなじ行動こうどうを繰り返かえます。

Zombies, though dead, repeat the same actions as when they were alive.

11. ゆっくりながら（も）、完成かんせいに近ちかづいています。

Although slowly, I'm approaching completion.

12. 残念ざんねんながら、記録きろくは更新こうしんできませんでした。

Unfortunately, I was unable to break the record.

13. 憲太郎けんたろうくんは失敗しっぱいするとわかりながら（も）、そのままやってしまう性格せいかくだ。

Kentaro has the kind of personality of doing something as is even if he understands that he'll fail.

14. 神かみが赦ゆるさない罪つみだと知しっていながらも、故意こいに続つづけていく。

To continue purposely doing something whilst knowing it is a sin God does not condone.

15. 社員しゃいんが不正ふせいを知しりながら勧誘かんゆうしていたことがわかりました。

It has been discovered that company employees were soliciting whilst knowing of the illegality.

16. 狭せまいながらも、自分じぶんのアパートを手てに入入れることができました。

While small, I've obtained my own apartment.

17. 貧まずしいながらも、穏おだやかに暮くらすことができます。

Once can live calmly live whilst being poor.

18. 及およばずながら、一生懸命いっしょうけんめいやります。

I'll do it to the best of my ability, as poor as that may be.

19. 完全かんぜんではないながらも、英語えいごの綴つづりと音おとにはある程度規則いどきそくがあります。

Although not absolute, there are rules to some degree to the spelling and sounds of English.

---

### もさることながら

もさることながら is a set phrase that follows nouns that states that the one quality is of course true, but a second quality is also just as so.

20. 中華料理ちゅうかりょうりは味あじもさることながら、健康けんこうにいいですよ。

It goes without saying that Chinese food is tasty, but it's also good for you.

21. 富士山ふじさんは紅葉もみじもさることながら、冬景色ふゆげしきも綺麗きれいです。

The autumn leaves of Mt. Fuji go without saying, but its winter-scape is also pretty.

22. この車くるまは燃費ねんぴの良よさもさることながら、ネット上じょうでの評判ひょうばんも高たかかったです。

The gas mileage of this car goes without saying, but its internet review was high as well.

### ながらに（して）

In the patterns ながらに（して） or ながら（の）, the particle ながら may also mean "as" as in staying "as is" in a certain condition. Just as is the case with the past usage, instances of this meaning ought to be learned on a case-by-case basis.

23. すべての人ひととは生うまれながらに平等びょうどうである。

All men are born equal.

24. 田中たなかさんは家いえに居いながらにして、月つきに70ななじゅう万円まんえんくらいの収入しゅうにゅうを得えている。

Mr. Tanaka earns an income of approximately 700,000 yen a month whilst staying at home.

25. 村民そんみんは昔むかしながらの伝統でんとうを守まもり続つづけている。  
The villages continue protecting traditions as they were long ago.

26. 彼かれは子供こどもながらにしっかりしている。  
He's quite level-headed despite being a kid.

27. 夏子なつこは、自分じぶんの目めの前まえで起おこった悲惨ひさんな出来事できごとを涙なみだながらに語かたりました。  
Natsuko tearfully spoke of the tragic events that transpired in front of her eyes.

28. いつもながら、彼氏かれしの料理りょうりはとてもうまい。  
My boyfriend's cooking is very delicious as always.

29. この会社かいしゃは昔むかしながらの製法せいほうで豆腐とうふを作つくっている。  
This company makes tofu with traditional methods.

30. 人間にんげんには、生うまれながらにして貧富ひんぷの差さがある。  
Humans are born with a disparity of wealth.

## 第212課: No Doubt that: ～に違いない, ～に相違ない, & ～に決まっている

～に違いない and ～に相違ない are not necessarily difficult, but there are certain problems that students have. The unusual way it connects to adjective/verb expressions, not properly understanding what can follow them, and not understanding formality differences are the main sources of error. The lesson will be ended with the similar ～に決まっている.

### ～に違いない VS ～に相違ない

First and foremost, these expressions are both translated as "there is without a doubt that...". This is the immediate source of confusion because you can add phrases like "I think that" or "probably" in English without causing ungrammaticality. However, with these Japanese expressions, doing so does. First, consider the following defining of these terms.

～に違いない: Not from objective proof or logical speculation, but rather from the speaker's own experience, this phrase shows one's intuitive speculation/confidence. With such a bold move, it is without surprise that this is quite strong. It is often used in situations where it's as if one is talking to oneself in attempts to verify one's own guess or deliberation.

～に相違ない: Like ～に違いない, it shows intuitive speculation/confidence, but it is more stiff and formal. This formality difference is very important to keep in mind. One reason is that speech modals more akin to the spoken language like the final particle から, which is commonly used with ～に違いない, are not

typically used with ～相違ない. This also implies that there is no mistake in it; thus, it gives a more confident tone. Thus, although adverbs like きっと are common with ～に違いない, it is not with ～に相違ない due to the tone. Although perhaps of old logic, some speakers feel this is more so indicative of middle-aged/old men as they are more likely to use old-fashioned expressions, which would not be old-fashioned for them, and fits the traditional tone for masculine speech.

These patterns attach to phrases in the following manner.

Nouns    N (である) + ～に {違い・相違} ない  
形容詞    形容詞 + ～に {違い・相違} ない  
形容動詞 形容詞 (である) + ～に {違い・相違} ない  
Verbs    Verb + ～に {違い・相違} ない

Notice that it does not say Adj/V + こと + に {違い・相違} ない. It is a set phrase, and like other phrases with に, the reason for why this is allowed stems from a Classical Japanese grammatical maneuver of using conjugational parts of speech as nominal phrases when in the 連体形. As this base has changed appearance for many items, it's not surprising that in Modern Japanese this technique is limited.

---

---

### Examples

1. 政府の報道官の応答はどんなに（か）悔しかったに違いない。

The response of the government spokesperson was in no doubt overly regrettable.

**Grammar Note:** In a more literary sense どんなに（か） may be replaced with いかばかりか. Also note that the use of か with this in the first place is hardly ever heard.

2. 違いない（その通り）、君の言う通りだ。

That's right. It's just as you say.

3. この計画の実行は困難に違いない。

It is without a doubt that this plan's implementation is difficult.

4. 泥棒どろぼうが入ったに違いない。

There is no doubt that a robber came in.

5. 馬鹿者ばかものには違いないが、責任を取らざるをえないだろう。

Although it's without a doubt that you're an idiot, there's no other way but to take responsibility.

By 大仏次郎おさらぎじろう

6. 明日は曇くもるに違いない。

It will definitely be cloudy tomorrow.



7. 社長は天才であることに相違ない。

There's no doubt that the company president is a genius.

8. 「あの女の人は誰でしょうか」「ケンさんのガールフレンドに違いありません。手を繋がないで一緒に歩いていますから」

"Who is that woman?" "There's no doubt that she's Ken's girlfriend because they're holding hands walking together".

9. 「あの人は何語なにごの学生でしょうか」「日本語の学生に違いありません。読んでいるものに「新しい」と書いてありますから」

"What language student is that person?" "That person is no doubt a Japanese student because the thing (that person) is reading has "atarashii" written on it"

10. 「あの人は日本に住んでいたんでしょうか」「そうに違いありません。日本の新聞を読んでいますから」

"I wonder if that person lived in Japan" There's no doubt about it because he's reading a Japanese newspaper"

11. 「あの女の人は結婚しているんでしょうか」「そうに違いありません。指輪ゆびわを嵌はめていますから」

"I wonder if that woman is married" "There's no doubt about it because she's wearing a ring"

## ～に決まっている

～に決まっている means "it is certainly..." and follows nouns, adjectives, or verbs. This speech modal shows 100% certainty and is reflective of 話し言葉. It shows that the speaker is very confident in labeling something as so. It is also used in chastising.

12. 彼は嘘うそをついているに決まっている。

He's certainly lying.

13. 夏は暑いに決まっている。

It is certainly hot in summer.

14. 負けるに決まってる。(Casual)

(They) will certainly lose.

## 第213課: **Based on:** に基づいて、を踏まえて、をもとにして、に沿って、に即して、& に則って

These phrases are definitely very similar to each other, but as you will see during the compare and contrast sections of this lesson, there are important differences to keep in mind.

## ～に基づいて

～に基づいて means "on the basis of/based off of/based on". Its attribute form may either be ～に基づいての or ～に基づいた. Broadly speaking, there are two main usages of Xに基づいてY. The first is "without deterring from a standard/criterion/norm/rule/law X, one carries out/executes an action Y". The other, which is found primarily in the written language, is "having A as a basis/foundation/modal/example/pattern/reference, one does/makes a decision B".

1. 事実に基づいた記述きじゅつをする。  
Describe on the basis of reality.
2. 彼女の議論は確かに証拠しようこに基もとづいていなかった。  
Her argument was certainly not on the basis of evidence.
3. 明らかなことに基づいた議論の余地よちのない事実。  
Unarguable facts based on obvious things.
4. このマニュアルに基づいて操作します。  
I will operate it based on this manual.
5. 規則に基づいて処理する。  
To process according to regulations.
6. さっきの例文に基づいた、もっと複雑なものです。  
These are more complicated ones based off of the previous example sentences.
7. 証拠に基づいて、加害者かがいしゃに死刑しけいを言い渡わたした。  
In line with the evidence, the assailant was sentenced to death.

**Variant Note:** ～に基づいて may also be ～に基づき in stiffer writing.

**Grammar Note:** For the attribute form, ～に基づいての must only be used when what it precedes is a standard of some sort. If it is not, you must use ～に基づいた instead.

## を踏まえて

The 一段 verb 踏まえる means "to be based on". So, ～を踏まえて means "on the basis of" just like ～に基づいて. It can also be seen as ～を踏まえ in the written language. Its attribute form may either be ～を踏まえての or ～を踏まえた. As its original literal meaning is "to tread on" in a defensive posture, it is used after words that can show a basis/foundation/precedent for something. Again, it cannot follow material for reference as a standard. Rather, it must follow an extant basis. This pattern is usually seen in the written language and finds itself in news reports all the time.

8. 自分の経験を踏まえてこういう。  
To say such based on one's own experience.

9. これまでの状況を踏まえて得た最終結論です。

This is the last argument gotten based on the conditions up to now.

10. 報告を {踏まえた・踏まえての} 処理

Processing based on the report

**Translation Note:** 踏まえる may also mean "to tread".

11. 両足で大地を {踏まえて・踏んで} 立って！

Tread on the ground with both your legs and stand!

## ～をもとにして

～をもとにして is used to show that one bases off of the good qualities of something. It does not necessarily have to be 100% congruent with the full truth in the circumstances. It shows willful change, and it is usually shortened in the spoken language to ～をもとに. When this pattern happens to be used as an attribute, it becomes ～をもとにした.

12. 私は親譲おやゆずりの財産をもとにして富とみを作りました。

I built my wealth on the fortune from my father.

13. 嘘うそをもとにして行おこなう。

To act upon a lie.

14. 事実を基にして書かれた劇だ。

It is a play written on the basis of the truth.

**漢字 Note:** Although this pattern is used both in the spoken and written language, when もと is written in 漢字, you have the options 基, 本, 素, 原, 源, 元, and 下. Thus, the meaning of this expression can be further refined. The first refers to a standard. The second refers to the foundation of something. The third refers to the subject matter. The fourth refers to raw materials. The fifth refers to a source. The sixth refers to the original way. The seventh refers to being under an influence. However, most natives cannot distinguish this well, and this is only knowledge relevant for when reading through literature.

## ～に沿って & More

### ～に沿って

～に沿って is used in a physical or cause and effect sense. It can also be seen as ～に沿いは stiff writing, but even here it is considerably rare. The attribute forms ～に沿った and ～に沿っての are slightly different. The former can be used when A fits nicely with B, but there can be some deviance. However, there can be no such deviance with the latter.

15. 時勢じせいに沿って生きる。

To live in consonance of the times.

16. 土手に沿って、苔こけが生えている。

Moss is growing along the embankment.

17. 事実に沿って、話しをしていただけますか。

Could you please talk along the facts (of the case)?

18. 湖に {○ 沿った・X 沿っての} 公園を歩きました。

I walked through the park that's alongside the lake.

19. 事業計画に {沿った・沿っての} 実施状況じっしじょうきょう

The status of implementation along the business plan

20. 僕は川に沿って歩いた。

I walked along the river.

**Variant Note:** ～に沿って may be replaced by the suffixes ～沿ぞい and ～伝づたい in the physical sense.

21. 軒のきづたいに倉庫そうこの裏に廻って行った。

Along the eaves, I went around the back of the storehouse.

22. 川伝いに走り回る。

To run around along the river.

23. 湖畔こはん沿いの道路を歩く。

To walk through the street alongside the lake shore.

24. 流れに沿うてやがて広野に出ると、頂上ちょうじょうは面白く切り刻きざんだよう  
で、そこからゆるやかに美しい斜線しゃせんが遠い裾すそまで伸びている山の端はに月  
が色づいた。野末のずえにただ一つの眺めである、その山の全まったき姿を、淡い夕映  
えの空がくっきりと濃深縹色ふかはなだいろに描き出した。

Along the stream, when we at last entered the wide, the moon changed  
colors in the edge of the mountain, which had a gently beautiful slant with  
the peak interestingly cutting it that stretched to the far base of the  
mountain. The light sunset sky sharply drew the perfect view of the  
mountain for the single view at the corner of the field a light yet deep  
indigo.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

**漢字 Note:** The spellings 添う・副う exist. The first is seen with the sense of  
"addition" and the latter is seen with the sense of "expectation/satisfaction".

25. 身に添った悲しみ

The sadness on oneself

26. 花が期待に副って見事に咲いたよ。

The flowers bloomed splendidly to my expectations.

～に即して is reserved to writing and often very stiff. If used in the spoken language, it is very formal or official sounding. It is frequently used to show that something is based on/along things. In even more formal writing, it can be seen as ～に即し.

27. 時代に即した教育

Education according to the times

28. 事実に即したドラマ

A drama in accordance with the facts

29. 法律に即した判断

A decision in accordance with the law

30. 理念に即した行動

Actions in accordance to an ideal

**Spelling Note:** As for spelling そくして, when the situation is based off of a given fact or observation you use 即して. However, if the situation is based on rules you use 則して, following the meanings of the 漢字 in question. There is a tendency to only use the former.

31. 前例に則して処理する。

To process according to precedent.

**Attribute Note:** The attribute forms available depends on the spelling. If 即して, you can only use に即した. If 則して, you can use either ～に則しての or ～に則した. Although with ～に即して one can't feel any sense of excess or deviance, with ～に則して you can. Thus, the differences in possible attribute forms arise. It's opposite to that of ～に沿って's attribute forms, so be careful.

---

～にのっとり

～に則って is from the て形 of 則る, which is used to show that one protects some sort of tradition/rule set up in the past. This part of the meaning comes from an old verb のる in combination with 採る. This のり can still be found in many words written as 法: 御法 (humble law), 内法 (inside measure), etc. This is why 則る can also, but rarely, be seen written as 法る. It is no surprise that these two concepts are found in the word 法則 (law; rule).

Whether this pattern is used in the spoken language or not is debatable, but it is very literary/rather stiff written speech modal. It can be used in official situations and in technical terms in relation to rules/costumes. It can also be seen as ～に則り, and the attribute form can be seen as ～に則っての or ～に則った without any restriction.

32. 遺言状に則って、遺産相続がなされます。

Inheritance will be carried out according to the will.

33. 憲法に則り、最高裁判所の判断が示される。

The Supreme Court's decision will be presented in accordance with the Constitution.

34. 仕来りに {則った・則っての} 儀式

A ceremony that is in accordance with tradition

## Points of Confusion

Although this section is not meant to exhaustively nitpick things, by the end of this section you will certainly have a better understanding of the differences between these phrases taught. Note that only those that truly seem synonymous will be addressed here.

35a. これまでの経験に基づいて、これからも頑張りたいと思う。X

35b. これまでの経験を元にして、これからも頑張りたいと思う。○

If you paid any attention to the kind of words and situations above with ～に基づいて, you should have noticed that they are all in the same vein in regards to the basis of something in regards to fact or circumstances. The problem with the first sentence, though, will lead us into a serious issue: what are the differences between ～に基づいて, ～をもとにして, ～に沿って, ～に即して, and ～に則って.

1. ～に基づいて, ～に基いて being a less common spelling, shows that an action or circumstance is taking place based on fundamentals, matter at hand, or in combination with some sort of proof.

36. 判決に {基づいて・基づき}、刑が執行される。

The verdict will be carried out according to the punishment.

37. 人は法に基づいて裁かれる。

People are judged according/based on the law.

**Usage Note:** This pattern is often used after words like 事実, 証拠, 経験, 規則, 情報, etc. Words that often follow this pattern include 判断する, 行動する, 決める, 作る, 裁く, 言い渡す, 下す, 等.

2. ～をもとにして, on the other hand, shows a meaning of “**basing on** fundamentals or matter at hand, while one capitalizes/utilizes on it or while one utilizes a certain part...”. The orientation of the expressions, thus, are quite different.

38. 資料を基にする。

To base it on the materials.

39. 人の噂をもとにして判断してはいけないよ。

I mustn't judge something based on people's rumors!

40. これまでの経験をもとにして、頑張りたいと思う。

I wish to try hard based on my experience up to now.

**Usage Note:** This pattern is often used after words like データ, 情報, 事件, 話, 噂, 等. Words that often follow this pattern include 頑張る, 書く, 作る, 対処する, 等.

3. ～に沿って, like the above two, all share the feature of being based on the matter at hand or fundamentals of something, but the peculiar part about this is that the meaning of “without there being a physical distance” is included.

41. 道に沿って花が植えられている。

Flowers are planted along the street.

42. 塀にそって進んでくれ。(Vulgar command)

Move forward along the wall!

43. 川に沿って歩きなさい。

Walk along the river.

44. 私の考えにそってやってほしい。

I would like for it to be done along my ideas.

**Usage Note:** This pattern is often used after words like 道路, 道, 川, 壁, 歩道, 考え, 意向, 等. Words that often follow this pattern include 行く, 歩く, する, やる, 進む, 等.

Without getting into the other two remaining patterns, there are still times when all three structures appear to work. However, there will always be nuance differences based on the lines outlined above.

45. 事実 {に基づいて・をもとにして・にそって} 作ってある。

It was created and based on facts.

Nuances differences still exist. The first sounds purely factual. The second sounds like it was based on fact but not entirely. The third sounds like it was closely aligned with the facts. In more complex sentences, these differences can be large enough for ungrammaticality calls if violated.

46. 取材 {○に基づいて・○をもとにして・Xにそって} 書かれている。

It is written based on collected data.

**Grammar Note:** ～にそって is bad because collected data could be conflicting. If this were known not to be the case, the unnaturalness would go away. Contextual environment and what kind of word(s) you're using a pattern with help you put things together within grammatical restrictions.

47. その図面 {○に基づいて・Xをもと(にして)・Xにそって}、配線工事をお願いします。

Please do the wiring work according to the blueprint.

48. この判例 {に基づいて・をもと(にして)} 裁判での闘い方を考えてみよう。

Let's try to consider the ways of fighting in the trial based on this judicial precedent.

49. 高校で得た経験に基づいて頑張りたい。X → をもとにして  
I will try hard based on experience I got from high school.

50. 過去の経験に基づいて判断した。○  
I judged based on past experience.

---

### ～に即して・に則って

Besides getting the reading wrong for the last one, which is ～にのっとして, the latter is often attached to words concerning standards/norms. Experiences are personal, so using it with such expressions would be unnatural. On the other hand, ～に即して also has the same meaning of “being based on/following”, just not with the particular restraint as ～に則って. If the spelling of the first is changed to ～に則して, it can have a meaning of showing something is done along rules/laws.

51. 伝統に {則って・即して・基づいて} 行われている。  
It is being done according to tradition.

52. 不法入国者は法律に則して強制送還される。  
Illegal immigrants will be forcefully repatriated according to the law.

## **第214課: After II: ～てからというもの (は) & ～て以来**

This lesson will primarily focus on ～てからというもの (は) , but it will also take time to compare it with ～てから ～て以来, which has not been discussed at this point.

### **～てからというもの (は)**

～てからというもの (は) : Right after something happens, there is a change, and that change persists from that point on. This pattern is not used for things in the recent past. This pattern is not used very often. So, it may be somewhat unnatural if the context doesn't sound really serious.

1. ギリシャに来てからというもの、国の家族のことを思わない日はありません。  
Ever since I've come to Greece, there has not been a day where I don't think of my family at home.

2. ドル安の問題は深刻である。今年度になってからというもの、ドル安 (の) 傾向けいこうは進む一方である。  
The weak dollar is a serious problem. The weak dollar trend will continue onward through this fiscal year and onward.

3. このタブレット端末たんまつを使ってからというもの、手放てばなせなくなった。  
Ever since using this tablet, I have not been able to let go of it.



## Comparison

To begin comparing ～てから, ～てからというもの, and ～て以来 (which will be discussed for the first time), consider the following examples.

4. この夏の検査けんさで、進行しんこう膵臓癌すいぞうがんと診断しんだんされて {から・からというもの・以来}、明日にでも死ぬかのような恐怖きょうふに捉われている。

Ever since being diagnosed with advanced pancreatic cancer in this summer's scan, I have been entrapped by the fear of maybe dying at morning's wake.

5. 就職して15年、部長になって {から・からというもの・以来}、ほとんど毎晩のように残業ざんぎょうで遅くなり、目に見えて顔色が悪くなっている。

Since becoming the department head after working for 15 years, he has been late almost every night it seems due to overtime, and his complexion has visibly worsened.

6. 武山たけやま美み砂子さこ15歳のときからずっと付き合っていた恋人こいびとと失恋しつれんして {から・からというもの・以来}、食事も喉のどを通らなくなって、衰やつれ果はてて、見る影かげもなくなってしまった。

Misako Takeyama couldn't put down food and withered down to the point of leaving a mere shadow of her former self ever since being lovelorn with her partner she had been with since the age of 15.

7. 愛犬を亡くして {から・からというもの・以来}、すっかり元気をなくし、人が変わったようになってしまった。

Since losing (his) beloved dog, (he) has lost all vitality, and (his) entire persona changed.

"A + て {からというもの・以来} + B" means that "After Situation A occurs, Situation B continues indefinitely since". The first option ～てからというもの agrees well with native Japanese phrasing and is occasionally used in the spoken language. On the other hand, ～て以来 is more appropriate in the written language. Even so, there are still nuance differences to keep in mind.

### Traditional Nuances of ～てからというもの & ～て以来

First, the nuances implied in Standard Japanese (標準語) will be discussed. It is important to understand now that what is to be described is now more often than not the case if you were to talk to speakers of the younger generation. However, knowing what has traditionally been went will help you when you see these phrases used in literature.

～てからというもの usually has a general negative evaluation of Situation B. There is the thought in the speaker that things could be a whole lot better, and there is thus a sense of severity of seriousness involved. Contrarily, ～て以来 is the opposite and generally has Situation B be positive. Both are ungrammatical, though, if Situation B is not continuing. So, neither allows Situation B to be the instant of a change.

In reality, not even ～てからというもの is used that much in the spoken language. It has essentially become almost as 書き言葉的 as ～て以来 despite not being a Sino-Japanese phrase.

Though Situation B has its limitations, there is historically no problem in negating it within the same sentence afterward. In order for this to work for both, a 期間 (time period) phrase such as #年 is attached after ～てから or ～て以来. So, you get ～てから#年というもの or ～て以来#年というもの. In fact, this pattern is often used without ～てから or ～て以来 for the same effect.

8. セスさんは、愛犬を亡くして {から・以来} 3年というもの、人が変わったようになっていたが、最近、少し元気を取り戻しつつあるようだ。

Seth seemed as if his personality shifted drastically since his dear dog died three years ago, but he has recently seemed to be recovering his vitality.

9. 今年は、とりわけ干ばつが長引き、この一月というもの、火事などが大おお暴あばれをして、各地に大きな被害ひがいをもたらしている。

As for this year, drought has especially prolonged, and in this month, wild fires and such have raged on and continued to bring great damage everywhere.

---

### **Restrictions a Thing of the Past**

It appears, though, that the restrictions on these phrases are disappearing due to disuse, and some can't really tell that they are different than ～てから. But, there should be some people who think gloom is coming if they heard the following with ～てからというもの. As said at the beginning, it is now more so emphatic with one's emotional appeal in presenting a change since as being severe or serious in now either a good or bad way.

10. 先月、競馬けいばで大穴おおあなを当ててからというもの、何であれ、勝ちに勝ちまくっているそうだ。

Ever since winning big last month in the horse races, I hear that he's raking in the wins no matter what the game is.

11. 大学生になってからというもの、毎日が楽しい。

Ever since becoming a college student, everyday is fun.

12. タバコをやめてからというもの、体が元気になった。

Ever since quitting smoking, my body has felt great.

13. タバコをやめてからというもの、体の調子がいい。

Ever since quitting smoking, my physical condition has been good.

### **第215課: Circumstance: 場合 & ～に備えて**

場合 means "circumstance" and the grammar behind it and its usage are very important.

## 場合

場合 is often in ～場合 (は) to mean "in the case/event of...". It is a nominal phrase, so it is not limited to this grammatical construction. It is very similar to the particle ～たら in that it presents a hypothetical. As it is used to pinpoint a circumstance, it often replaces the particle in doing so. Though you see it after ～た, it is a hypothetical situation of what could happen. So, it is inappropriate if the situation that you are raising is actually of the past.

1. 火事の場合、段階を使いなさい。

In the case of fire, use staircases.

2. 英語の場合はちゃんとイエスやノーを言いますが、日本語の場合は違います。

In the case of English, you precisely say yes or no, but in the case of Japanese, it's different.

3. 何か問題があった場合、誰だれに連絡れんらくすればいいですか。

In case of any problems, who would be good to contact?

It is very easy to use this phrase when stating a particular situation after stating the norm. After all, you are pinpointing a hypothetical that is important.

- 4a. 日曜や祝日は手数料は要らないが、平日の場合は手数料がかかる。

- 4b. 日曜や祝日は手数料は要らない。ただし、平日の場合は手数料がかかる。

There is no need for handling fees on Sundays and holidays, but on week days there is a charge.

**Grammar Note:** The two paraphrases are important in showing different situations where 場合 may be used, with the second option clearly being used in showing it in a two sentence statement.

**Particle Note:** The difference between ～場合, ～場合は, and ～場合に is essentially the same as with ～とき. The second option, of course, is used particularly when emphatically raising something or creating a contrast with another situation. The third option is used easily when the following clause involves an action/change.

5.

A: このゴムはどう使うんですか。

B: 椅子がガタガタする場合に、ここに嵌めてください。

A: ああ、なるほど。

B: 通常の場合は、椅子の後ろのポケットに入れておいてください。

A: How do you use this rubber?

B: Fit it in here in the event that the chair rattles.

A: Ah, I see.

B: In regular cases, place it the pocket behind the chair.

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント by 市川保子.

6. 火事の場合は、エレベーターを使わないでください。

In the event of a fire, please do not use the elevators.

7. 地震が起こった場合、階段を使ってください。

In the case of an earthquake, use the stairs.

8. エレベーターに閉じ込められた場合、長期戦を覚悟かくごして体力を消耗しようもうしないようにしてください。

In the case you are trapped in an elevator, try not to waste your energy and prepare yourself for long fight.

9. 地震が起こった場合、慌あわてて階段を降りたり昇のぼったりするのは危険なのでその場にしゃがんで待機しましょう。

In the event of an earthquake, because it is dangerous to hastily go up and down the stairs, let's crouch in that place and be on standby.

10. 最悪さいあくの場合ばあいを覚悟する。

To prepare for the worst.

11. それは極端な場合だよ。

That's an extreme case.

12. 場合によりけりだ。

It depends on the case.

13. 雨天の場合には、お電話ください。

Call me in the case that it rains.

14. 緊急の場合は警察を呼びなさい。

In the case of an emergency, call the police.

～ている場合 is used to criticize someone that is not dealing with a tense situation appropriately.

15. 笑ってる場合か？

Is this really the time to be laughing?

Also, ～場合 {が・も} ある, is similar to ことがある because it shows that something happens given a certain situation but doesn't always happen.

16. たまに遅刻する場合がある。

There are times when I'm late.

## ～に備えて

The 一段 verb 備える has several related meanings: "to provide", "to furnish", "to have (attributes)". In ～に備えて, it is equivalent to either "in case of", "for", etc. and is similar to phrases like ～ために and ～しないように.

17. 大洪水に備えて擁壁ようへきを造る。

To build a retaining wall to prevent a big flood.

18. いつ起こるか分からない災害に備えておきましょう。  
Let's prepare for the disasters we can't see predict.
19. 事故に備えて車ではいつもシートベルトを締めていてください。  
Always keep your seat belt on in a car in case of an accident.
20. 私はオリンピックに備えて練習しています。  
I am training for the Olympics.
21. 台風に備えるのは重要だ。  
Preparing for typhoons is important.

## 第216課: Whenever II: ～度に, ～都度, & ～につけ

This lesson will discuss slightly more advanced phrases that equate to "whenever".

### ～度に

～度（毎）に means "whenever". 度 is the native word/counter for the number of times, making it common in set phrases such as 度を重ねる (to continue repeat itself). Grammatically speaking, it is after either nouns or the non-past form of a verb. What it follows is either a definite integer of place, time, action, or activity. This X is the trigger for Y, which without doubt will occur. Thus, whenever you say “whenever” with ～度に, you are saying that Y will 100% happen.

Now, the ごと is important to keep in mind. In the past, it was not uncommon to see ～ごとに after verbs. Now, it causes the sentence to become unnatural. So, as an effect, ～度毎に is also typically only found with nouns.

---

### Examples

1. 幾度いくども失敗しっぱいを繰り返すのはつらいですね。  
Repeating a failure countless times is painful, isn't it?
2. 何事なにごとにも度たびを重ねれば必かならずや上達しようたつする。  
If you repeat anything all the time, you will certainly improve.
3. 機会きかいがある度に  
Whenever you get a chance
4. 俺おれはやる度に失敗しちまうんだよ。(Casual; masculine)  
Whenever I do it, I end up failing (which is why I won't do it)

### Grammar Notes:

1. This makes it very similar to ～につけ, which will be discussed in this lesson. However, if you interchange it for ～度に, you speak objectively and the emotional feel is lost entirely.

2. There is some similarity between ～ごとに and ～たびに. ～ごとに shows that when there is a chance, a habitual action is simply repeated. ～たびに, despite also showing same habitual action, when one encounters a *particular* opportunity, it gives a sense that it is not incidental. Thus, even if the action is special but the timing is not, you can't use ～たびに.

## ～都度

The most appropriate translation of 都度 is "whenever". Like 度, it must be used with の when with another nominal phrase, and it may also be accompanied by に. What is neat about 都度 is that it is often seen in the pattern その都度.

都度 is less emphatic and less likely to be in more personal situations. It is very similar "each time it happens".

---

## Examples

5. 取引とりひきのつど残高欄ざんだからんに残高金額きんがくが示されるようにしたものです。

Whenever it is exchanged, the balance amount is made shown in the bank balance column.

6. 彼氏に会うその都度つど、彼女はとても嬉うれしくなるようです。

It seems that she becomes very happy whenever she meets her boyfriend.

7. 夫の両親が来る時はその都度喧嘩けんかが始まる。

Whenever my husband's parents come, an argument gets started (with them).

## ～につけ

Following nouns or the 連体形 of verbs or adjectives, ～につけ means "each time when/both...and...". It is mainly used in the written language, but it is also used in formal speaking situations. What comes before it/what it follows is a constant that causes a change. In other words, if there is a situation X, then no matter what, along with X, Y reflexively occurs, and at the same time, a psychological change is brought about.

In the case that Y describes a past event, X is the trigger in remembering Y, and a sense of emotion suitable to that memory is expressed. This pattern

is often after verbs such as 見る, 聞く, and 思う. The pattern is then often followed by phrase that captures the emotion the speaker wishes to portray.

～につけて is naturally more suitable for the spoken language, but when used in examples like the first one and others such as 雨につけ風につけ, ～につけて is impossible. This is due to the antithetical element.

There is also ～につけても. This adds the particle も, which in this situation adds the function of analogy. So, aside from A, it is used to show various changes of B happening.

---

### **Examples**

8. 喜びにつけ悲しみにつけ

Both in joy and in sorrow

9. あいつを見るにつけ、兄を思い出させる。

Each time I see him, he reminds me of my older brother.

10. 試験をもう一度失敗するにつけ、憂鬱ゆううつが蘇よみがえる。

Each time when I fail the exam once more, my depression comes back.

11. 何事につけても、喜んでお手伝いします。

Whatever you do, we're ready to gladly help you.

12. 年のせいなんだろう、暑いにつけ、寒いにつけ、よく風邪を引くようになった。

I wonder if it's because of my age; both when hot and when cold, I have become more prone to having colds.

13. この写真を見るにつけ、いつも思い出すのは、あの決して美しくはなかった青春時代のことである。(Written)

Each time I see this photo, I always remember my completely ugly youth.

## **第217課: The Supplementary Verb する**

Essentially all material in this lesson should be review. What this lesson will try to do is showcase the various usages of the supplementary verb する, which by now you should be accustomed to seeing and using.

### **With Bound Particles**

Bound particles are often placed after a base and followed by the supplementary verb する. For example, the particles は, も, and や may follow the 連用形 and are then followed by する to greatly emphasize the verb.

1. 彼女は褒めこそすれ、非難したことはない。

She does speak highly (of others), but she never criticizes.

2. 聞きもしないで批評すんな。

Don't criticize without listening.

3. 彼女は日本語が話せはするが、うまくはないね。

She can speak Japanese, but she's not good.

4. 責めやしないのはいつまでも最良の決定です。

Not blaming (others) is the best decision no matter what.

5. 彼は顔の前で両手を広げ、それからぱたんとあわせる。「世の中にはいっぱい納屋があって、それらがみんな僕に焼かれるのを待っているような気がするんです。海辺にぽつんと建った納屋やら、たんぼのまん中に建った納屋やら・・・・・・・・とにかく、いろんな納屋です。十五分もあれば綺麗きれいに燃えつきちゃうんです。まるでそもそもの最初からそんなもの存在もしなかったみたいだね。誰も悲しみゃしません。ただ一消えちゃうんです。ぷつんヽヽヽってね」

He spread out his hands in front of his face, clapped them together with a bang and then said, "There are a lot of barns in this world, and I feel like waiting for them all to burn. Whether it is the barn standing up all alone on the seashore, the barn built in the middle of a field, just a wide variety of barns. Given fifteen minutes, one can burn down completely quite nicely. It's as if from the very beginning like those barns had no existence. No one is saddened by this. They just disappear, with a *snap*".

From 納屋を焼く by 村上春樹.

**Grammar Note:** Notice how は may contract in the construction "連用形+はする".

## In Honorifics

する is a very important verb in humble speech. It is seen after the stems of verbs to show first person action.

6. ご案内します。

I will guide you.

7. ご奉納します。

I will offer (this).

8. お待ちします。

I will wait.

## With the Particles たり and など

たり attaches to the 連用形 to primarily show back and forth action and must always be used with する. In the same fashion, など may also list actions by following the 連体形 of a verb.

9. 休日に雑誌を読むなどして過ごすのは本当につまらない。

To spend the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines is really boring.



10. 彼は泣いたり笑ったりばかりしている男だ。  
He's only a guy that cries and laughs.
11. 遊んだり働いたりしているというのが若さの意味だ。  
The meaning of youth is to play and work.
12. 彼女は掃除をするなどして暮らしていた。  
She lived on doing things such as cleaning.

## With the Volitional Form

With the auxiliary verbs ～う, ～よう, and ～まい + と it shows volition in trying to (not) do something. Of course, the first two auxiliaries are positive and the last is negative.

13. 嘘をつこうとしたが、つけなかった。  
I tried to lie, but I couldn't.
14. 負けるまいとする。  
To try not to lose.
15. 彼は歌おうとしたが、うまくなかった。  
He tried to sing, but it wasn't good.

## ～ようにする

This usage is translated as "to try...". This is to try to do something for the long run, unlike above. Furthermore, the よう in this pattern is from 様: it's not the volitional ending. The volitional ending ～よう came from a sound change when the original volitional contracted from む → ん and then → う. With some verb classes, this resulted in the birth of ～よう, most certainly because of pronunciation ease.

16. できるだけ野菜を食べるようにする。  
I'll try to eat vegetables as much as possible.
17. もう二度と会わないようにした。  
I tried to not see him a second time.
18. 遅れないようにしてください。  
Please try not be late.

**Variant Note:** ～ようとする is a more formal variant.

## ～ことにする

In this speech pattern the speaker shows what he or she decided with his or her own will. Remember that this pattern can also be seen as ～こととする, which is deemed to be more punctual and formal.

19. 私は酒を飲むのをやめることとしました。  
I have decided to quit drinking liquor.

20. 東京に引っ越すことにした。  
I have decided to move to Tokyo.

21. たばこをやめることにしましたよ。  
I've decided to quit smoking!

## ～としたことが

Being equivalent to ～ともあろうものが, it shows dismay and regret for someone's abnormal misbehavior.

22. 彼女としたことが、大変なことを言ってしまった。  
Of all people, she accidentally said something that bad!

## ～と[すると・したら・すれば]

～と[すると・したら・すれば] means "if there were". The slightly different nuances of the conditional patterns still apply.

23. 十時に出たとすればもう着いているだろう？  
If we had left at 10 o' clock, wouldn't we already have arrived?

24. 四次元よじげんの世界せかいがあるとすれば、どのようなものだと思いますか。  
What do you think of what kind of a world it would be if we assumed that there was a 4 dimensional world?

25. 仮に戦争が起ったとしたら、何千、何百万の人々の命が失われるだろう。  
Supposed that war broke out, tens, hundreds of millions of lives would be lost.

26. 温泉に行くとしたら、どこがいいのでしょうか。  
If we were to go to a hot spring, where would be good?

27. 雨だとすると、中止だろう。  
If there's rain, it'll probably be postponed.

28. 大地震が起こるとすると、どうすればいいのか。  
If there were to be a big earthquake, what would we do?

29. 大学とすれば、抗議こうぎしないといけない。  
Assuming it's the university, we must protest.

## 第218課: ～に対して

～に対して is something that gets abused and confused with a lot of things. One of the biggest errors with it is using it in the first place. On top of that, it is frequently confused with other phrases as ～にとって and ～について, and

students often don't know when to add は to make 〜に対しては. This lesson will hopefully enable you to avoid such errors.

## 〜に対して

"Noun + 〜に対して" gives a meaning of targeting something and facing/confronting it.

1. この頃の親は子供に（対して）甘すぎる。  
Parents these days are being too sweet towards their kids.
2. 政府に（対して）不満を {言う・持つ} な。  
Don't complain about the government.
- 3a. 大統領は記者団の質問に対して事実関係を否定した。○  
3b. 大統領は記者団の質問に事実関係を否定した。X  
The president denied all facts of the case to the press group's questions.

At the end of the sentence there is a verb or adjective that shows some sort of urging/pressure. It wouldn't change the meaning to get rid of 〜に対して in the sentences above, but it's used to clearly state the object and direction of action. However, in sentences like the third one, it has to be used because it's used in a sense of "**against**".

4. 今の意見に質問がありますか。今の意見に対してご質問、ご意見があったらお願いします。  
Do you have questions to the opinion now? If you have any questions or ideas concerning this opinion, please feel free.
5. 寄生虫きせいちゅうに対して、どうしたらいいでしょうか。  
What should we do against parasites?

---

## 〜に対しては

This is still used in the spoken language, but it does have somewhat of a formal tone. 〜に対しては strengthens the speaker's judgment/feeling by emphasizing/contrasting.

6. 報道官は記者団に対してはまだ何も答えていません。  
The Press Secretary is still not answering anything to the press corps.
  7. 日本人は知らない人に対しては消極的だが、親しい人に対しては積極的な態度を見せることが多い。  
Japanese people often show negative attitudes towards people they don't know and positive attitudes to people that they are close with.
  8. 危険を与えるようなものに対しては、人間側が配慮すべきであろう。  
The human side should consider things that cause hazard.
-

## 文体

～に對しまして (very polite) and ～に對し (very stiff/formal/literary) are also possible.

9. 今回の不祥事ふしょうじに對して、お詫わび申し上げます。

I deeply apologize for this scandal.

10. ご家族の皆様に對し、心よりお悔くやみ申し上げます。

To all of those in the families, please accept my heartfelt condolences.

---

## 読み物: 殺害の事件

3日夜神奈川県かながわけん葉山町はやまちょうの住宅で9歳と生後9ヶ月の姉妹が刃物  
はももので刺さされて殺害された事件で殺人未遂さつじんみすいの疑いで逮捕たいほされ  
た母親が、警察の調べに對し「果物くだものナイフで刺した」と供述しているというこ  
とで、警察は動機や経緯けいいについて調べを進めることにしています。

The mother arrested on the night of the third under the charge of attempted  
manslaughter of her daughters aged 9 and 9 months old by stabbing them at  
home in Hayama Town, Kanagawa Prefecture says in her affidavit in the  
police investigation that she "stabbed (them) with a fruit knife", and the  
police are to investigate the motive and cause.

From NHK on October, 3, 2012.

1. How is に對して being used in this sentence?

2. Why would using に alone instead be wrong?

---

## ～に對して、というより

"に對して、というより" is a very common combination. In this case, you would  
not see ～に、というより. This would beat the point of making something  
stand out.

11. このことは日本人に對して、というよりすべての国の人知っておいてほしいこと  
です。

Rather than to Japanese, but I want this to be known to people of all  
countries.

---

## 連体形

There are **two attributive forms** of this pattern that are generally  
interchangeable, ～に對する and ～に對しての.

12. 結婚 {に對しての・に對する} 両家りょうけの価値観かちかんの違いに不安を感じ  
ます。

I feel anxiety over the differences of the two families values towards  
marriage.

13. 汚染おせん問題に対する解決策は余分よぶんの法律を可決するというわけではありませんよ。

The resolution to our pollution problem is not to pass further legislation.

---

### 数量+～に対して: 割合

With **number/counter phrases**, ～に対して **shows a ratio**.

14. 白菜はくさい1キロに対して塩50グラム入れてください。

For every kilogram of nappa, add 50 grams of salt.

15. 彼には一人の敵に対して百人もの味方みかたがいた。

For one enemy he had a hundred friends.

---

### ～に対して VS ～について・に関して

Now, when is this phrase similar to ～について and ～に関して? They all have a commonality of targeting something to show concern. However, the kinds of relation they represent are never the same. ～に対して shows something in regards of confronting whereas ～について・に関して state something regarding to the thing itself.

16a. その問題に対して説明してください。X

16b. その問題について説明してください。○

Please explain that problem.

17. スピード違反いはんに対する3万円の反則金はんそくきんなんて辛いんだよな。

A penalty of 30,000 yen for a traffic ticket is harsh, isn't it?

18a. その意見について反対します。X

18b. その意見に対して反対します。○

I am against that opinion.

19a. 昨日、水不足に関して節水制限せつすいせいげんが導入どうにゅうされました。X

19b. 昨日、水不足に対して節水制限が導入されました。○

Yesterday, water restrictions were introduced concerning the water shortage.

---

### Examples

As one can never have too many examples, the following examples will hopefully give you even more data to pull on in understanding ～に対して.

20a. 勉強しない学生に対して、除名じょめいしましょう。X

20b. 勉強しない学生を除名しましょう。

Let's drop students that don't study.

21. 軍隊ぐんたいは反乱軍に対して嘗かつてないほどの大規模な攻撃をした。  
The army made the biggest ever large-scale attack against the rebel army.

**Orthography Note:** 嘗て is normally just written as かつて.

22. 高田がぐうたらであるのに対して、益田は勤勉きんべんだ。  
In comparison to Takada being lazy, Masuda is a hard worker.

23. 2010年に円はドルに対してずっと手堅てがたい動きをしていた。  
The yen stayed firm against the dollar in 2010.

24. 我が国は、アジア諸国しょこくの人々に（対して）多大の損害そんがいと苦痛くつうを与えました。  
Our country brought great damage and pain to all of the peoples of Asia.  
Based off of the 村山談話.

25. むしこなーずは何の虫に対して効果こうかがありますか。  
What bugs does “big corners” have an effect on?

**Word Note:** むしこなーず is a kind of bug killer/repellent.

26. 私たちに（対して）遠慮えんりよしないでください。  
Please speak outright to us.

27. この品は値段に対して品質が悪い。  
As for these goods, the quality is bad for the price.

28. 日本では平均へいきんして職員一人に対して百万円の経費けいひがかかります。  
In Japan, on average, for a single worker, the outlay costs 1 million yen.

29. 和平に対する北朝鮮の疑惑ぎわくは日本の防衛を脅おびやかしています。  
Suspensions of North Korea for peace threatens Japanese security.

30. キックに対してもパンチに対しても使うのですか？  
Do you even use it in regards to a kick or even a punch?

31. 取扱説明書は、コンピュータに対する静電気の危険性きけんせいを、間接的に警告します。  
Guidebooks indirectly warn of the danger to computers by static electricity.

32. 友だちの経済学に対する関心はもっぱら学問上のもののようですが。  
It seems that my friends' interest in economics is largely academic.

**Particle Note:** が shows that the sentence is cut off, perhaps leading into something else.

33. トヨタのものづくりに対する情熱じょうねつと、日本のものづくりに対するこだわりは創業そうぎょう以来、決して変わらない。  
The passion towards Toyota manufacturing and dwelling on Japanese

manufacturing, since our founding, will never change.  
By 豊田章男 in April 2013.

## 第218課: ～に対して

～に対して is something that gets abused and confused with a lot of things. One of the biggest errors with it is using it in the first place. On top of that, it is frequently confused with other phrases as ～にとって and ～について, and students often don't know when to add は to make ～に対しては. This lesson will hopefully enable you to avoid such errors.

### ～に対して

"Noun + ～に対して" gives a meaning of targeting something and facing/confronting it.

1. この頃の親は子供に（対して）甘すぎる。  
Parents these days are being too sweet towards their kids.
2. 政府に（対して）不満を {言う・持つ} な。  
Don't complain about the government.
- 3a. 大統領は記者団の質問に対して事実関係を否定した。○  
3b. 大統領は記者団の質問に事実関係を否定した。X  
The president denied all facts of the case to the press group's questions.

At the end of the sentence there is a verb or adjective that shows some sort of urging/pressure. It wouldn't change the meaning to get rid of ～に対して in the sentences above, but it's used to clearly state the object and direction of action. However, in sentences like the third one, it has to be used because it's used in a sense of "**against**".

4. 今の意見に質問がありますか。今の意見に対してご質問、ご意見があったらお願いします。

Do you have questions to the opinion now? If you have any questions or ideas concerning this opinion, please feel free.

5. 寄生虫きせいちゅうに対して、どうしたらいいでしょうか。  
What should we do against parasites?

---

### ～に対しては

This is still used in the spoken language, but it does have somewhat of a formal tone. ～に対しては strengthens the speaker's judgment/feeling by emphasizing/contrasting.

6. 報道官は記者団に対してはまだ何も答えていません。  
The Press Secretary is still not answering anything to the press corps.

7. 日本人は知らない人に対しては消極的だが、親しい人に対しては積極的な態度を見せることが多い。

Japanese people often show negative attitudes towards people they don't know and positive attitudes to people that they are close with.

8. 危険を与えるようなものに対しては、人間側が配慮すべきであろう。

The human side should consider things that cause hazard.

---

### 文体

～に対しまして (very polite) and ～に対し (very stiff/formal/literary) are also possible.

9. 今回の不祥事ふしょうじに対して、お詫わび申し上げます。

I deeply apologize for this scandal.

10. ご家族の皆様に対し、心よりお悔くやみ申し上げます。

To all of those in the families, please accept my heartfelt condolences.

---

### 読み物: 殺害の事件

3日夜神奈川県かながわけん葉山町はやまちょうの住宅で9歳と生後9ヶ月の姉妹が刃物はもて刺さされて殺害された事件で殺人未遂さつじんみすいの疑いで逮捕たいほされた母親が、警察の調べに対し「果物くだものナイフで刺した」と供述しているということで、警察は動機や経緯けいいについて調べを進めることにしています。

The mother arrested on the night of the third under the charge of attempted manslaughter of her daughters aged 9 and 9 months old by stabbing them at home in Hayama Town, Kanagawa Prefecture says in her affidavit in the police investigation that she "stabbed (them) with a fruit knife", and the police are to investigate the motive and cause.

From NHK on October, 3, 2012.

1. How is に対して being used in this sentence?

2. Why would using に alone instead be wrong?

---

### ～に対して、というより

"～に対して、というより" is a very common combination. In this case, you would not see ～に、というより. This would beat the point of making something stand out.

11. このことは日本人に対して、というよりすべての国の人に知っておいてほしいことです。

Rather than to Japanese, but I want this to be known to people of all countries.

---



## 連体形

There are **two attributive forms** of this pattern that are generally interchangeable, ～に対する **and** ～に対しての.

12. 結婚 {に対しての・に対する} 両家りょうけの価値観かちかんの違いに不安を感じます。

I feel anxiety over the differences of the two families values towards marriage.

13. 汚染おせん問題に対する解決策は余分よぶんの法律を可決するというわけではありませんよ。

The resolution to our pollution problem is not to pass further legislation.

---

## 数量+～に対して: 割合

With **number/counter phrases**, ～に対して **shows a ratio**.

14. 白菜はくさい1キロに対して塩50グラム入れてください。

For every kilogram of nappa, add 50 grams of salt.

15. 彼には一人の敵に対して百人もの味方みかたがいた。

For one enemy he had a hundred friends.

---

## ～に対して VS ～について・に関して

Now, when is this phrase similar to ～について and ～に関して? They all have a commonality of targeting something to show concern. However, the kinds of relation they represent are never the same. ～に対して shows something in regards of confronting whereas ～について・に関して state something regarding to the thing itself.

16a. その問題に対して説明してください。X

16b. その問題について説明してください。○

Please explain that problem.

17. スピード違反いはんに対する3万円の反則金はんそくきんなんて辛いんだよな。

A penalty of 30,000 yen for a traffic ticket is harsh, isn't it?

18a. その意見について反対します。X

18b. その意見に対して反対します。○

I am against that opinion.

19a. 昨日、水不足に関して節水制限せつすいせいげんが導入どうにゅうされました。X

19b. 昨日、水不足に対して節水制限が導入されました。○

Yesterday, water restrictions were introduced concerning the water shortage.

---

## **Examples**

As one can never have too many examples, the following examples will hopefully give you even more data to pull on in understanding ～に対して.

20a. 勉強しない学生に対して、除名じょめいしましょう。X

20b. 勉強しない学生を除名しましょう。

Let's drop students that don't study.

21. 軍隊ぐんたいは反乱軍に対して嘗かつてないほどの大規模な攻撃をした。

The army made the biggest ever large-scale attack against the rebel army.

**Orthography Note:** 嘗て is normally just written as かつて.

22. 高田がぐうたらであるのに対して、益田は勤勉きんべんだ。

In comparison to Takada being lazy, Masuda is a hard worker.

23. 2010年に円はドルに対してずっと手堅てがたい動きをしていた。

The yen stayed firm against the dollar in 2010.

24. 我が国は、アジア諸国しょこくの人々に（対して）多大の損害そんがいと苦痛くつうを与えました。

Our country brought great damage and pain to all of the peoples of Asia.  
Based off of the 村山談話.

25. むしこな一ずは何の虫に対して効果こうかがありますか。

What bugs does “big corners” have an effect on?

**Word Note:** むしこな一ず is a kind of bug killer/repellent.

26. 私たちに（対して）遠慮えんりょしないでください。

Please speak outright to us.

27. この品は値段に対して品質が悪い。

As for these goods, the quality is bad for the price.

28. 日本では平均へいきんして職員一人に対して百万円の経費けいひがかかります。

In Japan, on average, for a single worker, the outlay costs 1 million yen.

29. 和平に対する北朝鮮の疑惑ぎわくは日本の防衛を脅おびやかしています。

Suspensions of North Korea for peace threatens Japanese security.

30. キックに対してもパンチに対しても使うのですか？

Do you even use it in regards to a kick or even a punch?

31. 取扱説明書は、コンピュータに対する静電気の危険性きけんせいを、間接的に警告します。

Guidebooks indirectly warn of the danger to computers by static electricity.

32. 友だちの経済学に対する関心はもっぱら学問上のもののようですが。  
It seems that my friends' interest in economics is largely academic.

**Particle Note:** が shows that the sentence is cut off, perhaps leading into something else.

33. トヨタのものづくりに対する情熱じょうねつと、日本のものづくりに対するこだわりは創業そうぎょう以来、決して変わらない。  
The passion towards Toyota manufacturing and dwelling on Japanese manufacturing, since our founding, will never change.  
By 豊田章男 in April 2013.

## 第220課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part II

In this second lesson on verbs with both intransitive and transitive usages, we'll continue to uncover peculiarities in Japanese at the individual word basis.

巻く, 運ぶ, 吹く, 催す, 結ぶ, & 頼る

### 巻く

巻く can be used to “to wind/coil/etc.” as an intransitive or a transitive verb. Its intransitive usage is not that common, and it is usually rephrased out of the sentence, often with 巻き付く.

1. 思おもいがけないほど渦うず（が）巻まいている。  
The whirlpool is swirling beyond expectation.  
It is whirling beyond expectation. (Without が).

2. 上空じょうくうの雲くもが渦うず（を）巻まいている。  
The clouds in the sky above are swirling in a whirlpool.

3. 薬くすりを塗ぬって包帯ほうたいを巻まいてください。  
Please apply the medicine and wind a bandage (around the wound).

4. ぐるりと巻まいた針はりのような長ながい口くちが特徴とくちょうです。  
It's long and completely wrapped up mouth, which is akin to a needle, is its trait.

5. 蛇へびがとぐろを巻まいている。  
The snake has coiled itself up.

**Spelling Note:** とぐろ may also be spelled as 蜷局.

6. 細ほそいツルが巻ま（き付つ）いている。  
The slender vines are twined around.

**Spelling Note:** ツル may also be spelled as 蔓.

7. 城しろが白しろい煙けむりに {包つつまれている・囲かこまれている・巻まかされている}。

The castle is enveloped by white smoke.

---

### 蒔く, 播く, & 撒く

There are three more まく that need to be addressed. All three are solely transitive verbs.

蒔く: Used to mean “to plant/sow/seed.”

播く: Interchangeable with 蒔く.

撒く: Used to mean “to scatter.” It may also be used in a figurative sense such as in “to spread (rumors).”

8. 野菜やさいの種たねを {蒔ま・播まいた} のに、芽めが出でません。

Even though I've sowed the vegetable seeds, they haven't sprouted.

9. ベランダや玄関先げんかんさきだけに豆まめを撒まいたとしても、きちんと回収かいしゅうすることは必要ひつようです。

Even if you've only scattered beans on your veranda and at your front door, it is necessary that you properly retrieve them.

**Cultural Note:** This is a reference to cleanup efforts after having scattered beans as part of commemorating 節分 (the last day of winter in the traditional Japanese calendar).

10. 悪わるい噂うわさを撒まき散ちらしている人ひとも、あまり信用しんようされていないでしょう。

The people spreading awful rumors are also likely not all that trusted either.

11. うちの猫ねこはほぼ毎日まいにち、遊あそびでトイレ (の) 砂すなを撒まき散ちらしてしまいます。

My cat scatters the sand in its litter box out of play almost every day.

---

### 運ぶ

As an intransitive verb, 運ぶ means “to proceed/to go (well),” but it is far more commonly used as a transitive verb to mean “to carry/transport.”

12. 植物しょくぶつの多おおくは、種たねを作つくるために花粉かふんを風かぜで運はこばなければなりません。

A lot of plants must carry their pollen via the wind to create their seeds.

13. 物事ものごとがうまく {いっている・運はこんでいる} ときにも油断ゆだん (を) してはいけない。

You also mustn't be careless when things are going well.

14. 成果せいかが出でているからといって、人生じんせいがうまく {いっている・運はこんでいる} とは限かぎらない。

Just because one is making results, it isn't necessarily the case that life is going well.

15. 全すべてがうまく {いっている・運はこんでいる} わけではありませんが、大おおきな失敗しっぱいもしていません。

It's not the case that everything is going well, but I'm also not making any great failures.

As the following example sentence demonstrates, 運ぶ can also be used to mean "to carry out." However, the verb 進める is far more common in this regard.

16. 対等たいとうに交渉こうしょうを {進すすめる・運はこぶ} ことは困難こんなんです。

Carrying out negotiations equally is difficult.

17. 本日ほんじつの作業さぎょうをもちまして一旦中断いったんちゅうだんの運はこびとさせていただきます。

We will temporarily suspend progress as of today's work.

**Grammar Note:** As a noun, 運び far more frequently is used to mean "progress" than its verbal form 運ぶ.

---

### **Fuku** 吹く

The verb 吹く can be used as both an intransitive and a transitive verb, but as a transitive verb, it is rather restricted. For one, the subject never acts out of its own volition. This is just like what was the case with ひらく and the meaning "to bloom."

18. 部屋へやの隅すみから微風そよかぜが吹ふいてきた。

A breeze blew in from the corner of the room.

**Reading Note:** In literature, 微風 may seldom be read as びふう.

19. 夜よるに口笛くちぶえを吹ふいてはいけない。

You mustn't whistle at night.

20. カモメは、海うみから吹ふく上昇気流じょうしょうきりゅうに乗のって飛とびます。

Seagulls fly by riding the updrafts that blow from the sea.

**Spelling Note:** カモメ may also be spelled as 鷗・鷗. The former variant is an unofficial abbreviation that has become widely used.

When used to mean "to bud," 吹く can never be used in the passive. This is largely due to the absence of volition plants have in budding. It's also important to note that the verb 芽吹く, which has 吹く in it, typically replaces 吹く for this nuance.

- 21a. 木々きぎが芽めを吹ふき始はじめた。  
21b. 木々きぎが芽吹めぶき始はじめた。  
21c. 芽が木々きぎによって吹ふかれた。X  
The trees have begun to bud.

22. 突然とつぜん、鍋なべが噴ふき零こぼれて、熱湯ねっとうが足あしに掛かかって火傷やけどをしてしまいました。  
Suddenly, the stew boiled over and my leg got burned by boiling water.

**Word Note:** Just as in English, a pot for stew can be used to refer to the stew itself.

There are two other verbs that are also ふく. Both are purely transitive and do not have the same grammatical constraints as 吹く・噴く above.

23. 手てを濡ぬらしたハンカチで拭ふく。  
To wipe one's hand(s) with a wettened handkerchief.

24. 犬が顔を拭かれて怒ってしまった。  
The dog got angry from having its face wiped.

25. 瓦かわらで屋根やねを葺ふきました。  
I thatched the roof with tile.

26. 草くさで葺ふかれた部分ぶぶんが吹ふき飛とばされた。  
The parts thatched with grass were blown off.

---

### 催す

When you open up a dictionary, the first meaning of 催す that you will find is "to hold (a ceremony)." However, instances like 宴を催す (to hold a banquet) are rare and literary. Although the verb itself is usually only used in the written language, its most important meaning is "to feel (a physical sensation)." In that sense, it can be used as either an intransitive or a transitive verb, and although が and を appear seemingly interchangeable, the use of が is disappearing.

27. 少すこし眠気ねむけ {が・を} 催もよおしてから、安定剤あんていざいを飲のむ。  
To take a stabilizer after showing signs of some drowsiness.

28. ビールで尿意にようい {が・を} 催もよおすのはアルコールに利尿作用りにようさ  
ようがあるためです。  
Having the urge to urinate from bear is due to the diuretic effect of alcohol.

29. 意識いしきが朦朧もうろうとし、吐はき気け {が・を} 催もよおす。  
To feel nauseated while in a hazy state.

30. 浣腸かんちょう (を) して便意べんい {が・を} 催もよおす。  
To feel a bowel movement from taking an enema.

---

## 結ぶ

結ぶ is usually used as a transitive verb meaning “to tie/link.” As an intransitive verb, it can be used to mean “to bear (fruit)” or for dew to coagulate, but other verbs typically replace it.

31. 草くさの葉はに露つゆが {付ついている・付着ふちゃくしている・結むすんでいる}。

Dew has attached/condensed onto the grass leaves.

32. 努力どりよくが {実みを結むすぶ・実みのる} と信しんじている。

I believe our efforts will bear fruit.

33. 努力どりよくの実みが結むすぶことを願ねがっています。

I wish that the fruits of our efforts will manifest.

34. マカオと香港ほんこん（と）を結むすぶ橋はしの工事こうじが進すすんでいる。

Construction on a bridge connecting Macao and Hong Kong is making progress.

**Spelling Note:** Traditionally, マカオ is spelled as 澳門.

35. 条約じょうやくを {結むすぶ・締結ていけつする} ことに成功せいこうする。

To succeed in entering a treaty.

---

## 頼る

The verb 頼る has three different nuances depending on how it is used.

- In “(X を) Yに頼る,” it shows dependency meaning “to rely on Y (for X).”
- In “Yを頼る,” it shows from whom/what you get help from. Essentially, you are purposely using connections.
- In “Yを頼りにする,” it shows with whom/what one depends on out of trust.

36. 日本にほんが今いま、100ひゃくパーセント輸入ゆにゅうに頼たよっている食たべ物ものってなんですか？

What foods does Japan now 100% rely on imports for?

37. 医者いしゃと薬くすりに頼たよるのを止めませんか。

Why not stop relying upon doctors and medicine?

38. スマホに頼たよると、集中力しゅうちゅうりょくが落おちる。

If you rely on your smart phone, your concentration will drop.

39. 需要予測じゅうようよそくに頼たよりすぎるべきではない。

You mustn't over-rely on demand forecasts.

40. 経済けいざいを資源しげんの輸出ゆしゅつに頼たよる国くに多おおくあります。

There are many countries who rely on the importing of resources for their economies.

41. 飼料しりょうとして使つかわれる穀物こくもつの多おおくを海外かいかいからの輸入ゆにゅうに頼たよっている。

We rely on the imports from foreign countries for a lot of the grain that is used for feed.

42. 使用量しりょうのほとんどを中国ちゅうごくに頼たよっている。

We're relying on China for most of the amount used, has no choice but to accept.

43. 知人ちじんを頼たよって渡米とべいしました。

I relied on an acquaintance to travel to America.

44. 一度地図いちどちずを頼たよって行おこなってみました。

I tried going once by depending on a map.

45. 伝手つてを頼たよってソマリアの海賊かいぞくたちに会あいに行いきました。

I used connections to go meet the Somalian pirates.

46. 皆みなさんは何なにを頼たよりに生きていらっしゃいますか。

What does everyone rely on to live?

47. 地図ちずを頼たよりに最寄もよりの駅えきに向むかいました。

I headed toward the nearest train station, relying on a map.

48. いくら結婚けっこんできなくても婚活こんかつビジネスを頼たよるのはやめた方ほうがいい。

No matter how much trouble you have in getting married, it's better to stop relying on marriage hunting businesses.

49. 名医めいいを頼たよって病院びょういんを選えらぶという人ひととは少すくなくありません。

There are far from few individuals who chose hospitals by recouring to noted physicians.

50. 現在親げんざいおやを頼たよって生活せいかつしています。

Currently, I am living by relying on my parents.

## 第221課: Standpoint: として (は) VS にとって (は)

This lesson is about relatively similar speech modals that concern describing standpoint or point of view. Although their English translations cause great confusion to learners, don't let this beat you.

### ～として (は)

1. The first uses of ～として that we will study are after nominal phrases. This is something really important to keep in mind because other usages of this will go after other things. So, don't get things confused in your mind.

The first thing that として is most known for is when it shows "qualification/ title". In other words, it functions like the as in "to carry out one's duty **as** an



officer". It can also be used to show what you have something as. This is somewhat causative in nature, but in this sense it is closer to utility. So, just as you can say, "to use a sharp stick **as** a knife", you can say 鋭い枝をナイフとして使う. Notice, though, that "as" in English can be used in many more situations than what has just been defined for として.

"(Aは)B としては" is typically just a contrastive usage of として, but it can have nuances more similar to "among" in the sense of ~の場合には. It could also emphasize a side of judgment. For instance, if you were to say 私としては, you are emphasizing your side of opinion.

**Particle Note:** When used to modify another noun phrase, which is possible as well in English, you must use ~としての.

---

1. ジョン万次郎まんじろうは、日本人として始めて、アメリカで教育を受けた。  
Jon Manjiro was the first person as a Japanese to receive an education in America.
2. 石炭を燃料として使う。  
To use coal as fuel.
3. 私一己としては  
For my own part/personally
4. 私としては、彼の意見に反対です。  
As for me, I don't agree with his opinion.
5. 最高傑作として作る。X      →      最高傑作を作る。  
To create as a masterpiece.
6. 最高傑作としての条件   ○  
Conditions as a best work masterpiece
7. くそあいつは教師としても無能だぞ。(Vulgar)  
That guy is also incompetent as a teacher.

**Usage Note:** This usage is deemed to be case.

---

2. Shows complete negation with a word showing unit.
8. 僕は、一日として彼女のことを思わない日はない。  
There's not even a single day that I don't think about her.
9. 一人として賛成しません。  
Not one person can agree.

**Usage Note:** This usage is deemed to be adverbial.

---

3. After the 終止形 it means "in assuming that" or "with the reason of".

10. 話は後ですとして、まず食事にしましょう。  
Let's leave talking for later and eat first.

**Usage Note:** This usage is deemed to be conjunctive.

---

**Grammar Note:** として is a grammaticalized object that should be studied separately from とする. Though its usages derive from it, it has become its own grammar point in its own right. Thus, it should be differentiated from a として from とする used at the end of a dependent clause, in which て would still have a conjunctive function. The として is also not the same as the として found in the 連用形 of タル形容動詞.

11. 堂堂としている。  
It's magnificent. (Grand; impressive)
12. われわれはその実験の結果を基礎として、学会雑誌に発表することになりました。  
We had the results of that experiment as our basis and published (the results) in a scientific journal.
- 

### **In Relation to ～とする**

Up to now, there have been several mentions of ～とする. How exactly does this fit with this section? Furthermore, how are you supposed to know what you're looking at? "AをBとする" is "to make/have A be B" a certain way where と shows the content/substance of a result. ～とする can mean "to presume; to think that; etc.

13. その結果を基礎としている。  
To be having the results as the basis.
14. 業としている。  
To be pursuing a vocation.
15. 石炭を燃料とする。  
To have coal be (used as) fuel.
16. 今は配慮を必要としている。  
We need forethought now.
17. 一時として目が離せないよ。  
My eyes can leave a single moment.
18. 長官として発言する。  
To speak as a general.
19. 初めて会う人やよく知らない人には敬語を使うのが礼儀だとされていますよ。  
It is deemed proper etiquette to use Keigo towards people such as those you first meet or don't know well.

20. 人を殺すのが犯罪（だ）とされていない者はいるのか。

Is there a person that doesn't deem killing a person a crime?

---

### ～としても

～としても is after nominal phrases to mean "even the position of..." or "even if...were to...".

21. 私としても、この事柄は重要ではないとよく分かります。

As for me, too, I understand well that this matter is not important.

22. 新車を買うとしても、今度もやっぱ（り）黒いのにしよう。

Even if we were to buy a new vehicle, let's surely get the black one this time.

23. 行けるとしても、少し遅れてしまうかも。

Even if we were able to go, we would end up being a little late.

24. 生まれ変わったとしても、またそんなことをするのか。

Even if I were born again, would such a thing happen again?

### ～にとって

～にとって, equivalent to "（の立場・たちば）からみて", means "to/for" and shows someone's perspective on something. ～にとって may be with は to make a **slightly contrasting** image or with の attributively. It may be ～にとりまして in polite speech and ～にとっちゃ（あ） in slang.

25. 彼にとっちゃその方がええんだよ。（碎けた）

For him, that way's better.

26. 初心者にとってはあのクラスは難しい。

That class is difficult to beginners.

27. 人間にとっての事柄ことがら

A circumstance to humans

28. 韓国語を知っている人にとって、日本語は難しくないはずです。

For people who know Korean, Japanese isn't supposed to be difficult.

29. 核爆弾かくばくだんは世界平和にとっての重大な脅威きょういです。

Nuclear weapons are great threats to world peace.

### ～として VS ～にとって

Many students often overextend the usages of these two speech modals. Common mistakes include confusing these patterns with topicalization and "although phrases". As a quick exercise, consider the following sentences and what you should do to fix them.

- 30a. 彼女は学生として、学校へ行かず、遊んでばかりいるよ。X  
30b. 外国人として大変なのは食べ物だと思います。X  
30c. 僕にとってその色はあんまり好きじゃない。X

Hopefully you found something wrong with these sentences. The first order of business is to where these speech modals literally come from. ～として comes from the case particle と + the verb する; ～にとって comes from the case particle に + the verb 取る. Once put together, they mark their own unique case function. Thus, some people often call them "compound case particles".

"Noun + ～として" and "Noun + ～にとって" both show position/point of view, but in the case of the former, it is often used to state an action that one does/did as qualification and/or from a position/standpoint. This may sound confusing, but consider the following.

31. クラスの代表として委員会に出席しました。(Qualification/position)  
I attended the committee meeting as the class representative.

32. あなたの医者として、食事の量を減らすよう忠告します。  
As your doctor, I advise you to decrease the amount you eat.

On the other hand, ～にとって shows an evaluation or value judgment from the/a standpoint (of someone).

33. 私にとりまして、出張は大変思い出深かったです。  
For me, the business trip was very profoundly memorable.

**Usage Note:** ～にとりまして is normally used when talking to someone much older than you. So, the above sentence would most likely be 私にとって、出張は大変思い出深かったです.

34. これは私にとって忘れられない思い出です。  
This is a memory to me that I can't forget.

35. これはあたしにとってとっても大切なものなんだわ。(Feminine; Emphatic)  
This is something very important to me.

---

### With は

は is added to them when raising a circumstance as the topic, emphasis, or show a contrast.

36. 私としては、その考えには賛成いたしかねます。  
As for me, I can't agree to that idea.

37. あんたにとっちゃ朝飯前かもしれんが、俺にとっちゃ大変な仕事なんだよ。(砕けた)  
To you it may be trivial, but to me it's a big job.

### Contrast

38. 人 {として・にとって}大切なことは何か。

With ～として, the sentence suggests that what's being important should be done by people whereas ～にとって simply states what's so, or in this case simply stating a question.

39.

Aさん: A銀行がB銀行と合併がっぺいするそうですよ。

Bさん: へえ。でも、A銀行 {としては・にとっては}、そう悪いことではないんじゃないですか。

Aさん: でも、B銀行としては黙って見ているわけにはいかないんじゃないですか。

40.

Aさん: 文部省もんぶしょうとしてはどう考えていますか。

Bさん: 文部省としましては、今回の処置しょちはやむを得ないものと考えております。(謙譲語)

Exercise: Translate the last two passages!

---

These patterns also differ greatly in what kinds of sentences they're used in.

#### ～として

Circumstance	There is a sentence that shows that something happens, and the sentence after shows an opinion or stance concerning it.
Opinion	Used to present one's opinion and then show an opposite position.

41. 市から感謝状と記念品をいただきました。これは我が家の家宝として大切にしたいです。

I received a letter of thanks and mementos from the city. I would like to treat this as a family treasure in our home.

42. 義務教育の段階で外国語を教えた方がいい。外国語が話せるのは社会人として絶対に必要な教育である。

Foreign language should be taught at the level of mandatory education.  
Being able to speak a foreign language is absolutely necessary education for a person of society.

#### ～にとって

～にとって～の/ことは～だ/  
である A very emphatic derivative of the basic form.

In topic sentence After introducing the topic, a concrete explanation follows.

43. 今僕にとって唯一の楽しみになっているのは日本語の勉強です。

What has now become my sole enjoyment is my Japanese studies.

44. 昔の人々の生活にとって、お寺は欠かせないものだった。  
The temple was a necessary thing to the lives of the ancient.
- 

### **Words Used with Them**

#### 1. XとしてY

Words that follow Y:

Verbs that describe action: 言う、許す、行動する.

Verbs/adjectives that describe condition: 恥ずかしい、有名だ、知られている.

45. 彼は弁護士としては無能です。  
He is no good as a lawyer.

#### 2. XにとってY

Words that follow Y:

Potential expressions: 可能だ、忘れられない.

Adjectives of evaluation: 大切だ、難しい、大変だ.

Adjective + Noun

46. 世界の経済にとって、金融きんゆうを引き締めるのは好このましくない事態だ。  
For the world economy, tightening the money market is not a desirable situation.

### **第222課: Through: を通じて & を通して**

～を通して and ～を通じて without context are completely interchangeable.  
So, getting the small details straight will probably be the hardest thing about this lesson.

**漢字 Note:** Note that there is also 通かよう and 通とおる. The first is used in the sense of "commute" or flowing/understanding such as in phrases like 学校に通う and 心が通う. 通る expresses transit. Ex. 道を通る.

#### **～を通して VS ～を通じて**

を通しで and ～通（とお）じて are incorrect. Pronunciation is perhaps the most common mistakes about these. That should be good news. Both show a meaning equivalent to ～を経て/を仲介して to show a means "of through (the intermediary of)". They can also be used to mean "through" in a temporal sense.

1. 仕事を {通じて・通して} 人脈が広がっていった。  
My connections spread through my job.
2. 1年を {通じて・通して} スキーができる。  
You can ski (here) throughout the year.

3. 日本語の勉強を {通じて・通して} 日本人の考え方が少し分かってきました。  
Through my Japanese studies, I have come to understand the Japanese way of thinking a little.

通じる is a verb used to show the result gained by a certain action; 通す is thought to hold a volitional side. Although even in these examples either is OK, when you want to show volitional, the latter is the best choice.

In a normal situation where this is not an exceptional circumstance, it is best not to use ～を通じて. The longer the sentence, the easier it gets to become to decide whether it fits this criterion or not. Certain speech modals also aid in the decision.

4. 私はインターネット {○を通して・Xを通じて} 役に立つニュースを得ました。  
I got useful news through the Internet.

5. 一緒に働いた経験 {○を通して・Xを通じて}、ふたりは生涯かわらぬ友愛をもちつづけた。

Through the experience of working together, they continued to hold a friendship for life.

6. 仲人を通して縁談をすすめたほうがいいでしょう。  
Isn't it best to forward an engagement through a middleman?

7. ハッカーたちは、ウイルスに感染されたファイルを送りこめるインターネット {○を通じて、Xを通して}、ユーザーのシステムを破壊していく。  
Hackers through the internet that can send files infected with viruses go on to destroy the user's system.

Even when either is fine, there will always be slight nuance differences.

8. 社長との連絡は、すべて秘書を {通して・通じて} 行われた。  
All contact with the company president was carried out through the secretary.

The first option makes the situation far from out of the ordinary, but the second option makes it sound secretive.

There are two broad situations that can describe most sentences with these modals. There could be an intermediary between an X and Y, or through the means of A, B is done. Consider the following information for further distinguishing.

**Aを通してB:** Through the intermediation/means of A, B is done simply and clearly.

**Aを通じてB:** A, which is an intermediate or means, is something that can't be public, must be a secret, or is something unjust.

As mentioned earlier, there is a peculiar nature about ～を通じて, and special circumstances are often mysterious, clandestine, and may involve some sort of secret means. In this sense, it contrasts the openness and simplicity of action implied by statements with ～を通して.

Now, what about a sentence like the following?

9. この種の松林は、日本全国を {通して・通じて} 見ることができる。  
You can see this kind of pine forest throughout all of Japan.

If you get a native speaker that doesn't like one version or another, you probably need to find a different opinion. This sentence is different because there is no intermediation or means involved. In this sense they are similar to "throughout". The decision as to which one should be used goes down to individual speaker variation pending on whether that person likes more native words over 漢語. With this, ～を通じて can be used in a stiffer and more literary fashion.

---

### **Attribute Forms**

Don't you just love attribute forms? As you may have guessed, ～を通した, ～通しての, ～通じた, and ～を通じての are all possible, but they are not completely interchangeable.

Aを {通した・通じた} B can't be used in situations where A is a direct information source. This is because "Aを通す" and "A {を・が} 通じる" originally meant that through the intermediation of A, two spaces are connected (examples of this will be shown later in this lesson).

Accordingly, A both can be used as the go-between X and Y, but when A becomes the information source, "Aを通じてのB" or "Aを通してのB" must be used.

10. 秘書を {通した・通じた・通しての・通じての} 連絡が社長に届いた。  
A contact through the secretary reached the company president

11. 今回、入手した情報は、その筋の人を {○ 通しての・○ 通じての・X 通した・X 通じた} ものです。  
The information I received this time is info from a person of that source.

When showing consistency temporally or geographically, ～を通しての and ～を通じての are your only options.

12. 日本全国を {通じての・通しての} この種の松林は、日本の森林を特徴づけるもののひとつである。  
This kind of pine forest throughout Japan is one characteristic of the forests of Japan.

13. 山を {○ 通しての・△ 通じての} トンネル  
A tunnel through a mountain

It does become more natural to rephrase them out, especially since there's not much of a sense of familiarity in sentences like the second to last. Also, when there is not a sense of a go-between, ～を通じた・を通した mustn't be used.



14. 彼らは一緒に働いた経験を通しての友愛を持ち続けた。

They continued to hold friendship through the experience of working together.

---

### **Other Meanings**

Remember that 通す means "pass through" and can be used in several contexts. This remains the case in ～を通して. 通じる can mean "to lead through/get through/get across". Both are used in many idioms as well.

15. 道を開けて、車を通す。

To open up the road and let cars pass through.

16. 前に化け物が立ちはだかって、僕を通そうとしなかった。

A monster blocked my path in front of me, and it didn't attempt to let me pass by.

17. 空港まで政府が高速道路と新幹線を開通させた。

The government created passage through a highway and bullet train line up to the airport.

**Word Note:** 開通する is more appropriate here, but 新幹線を通す is an appropriate phrase, but it is more general in nature and doesn't fit well with 政府.

18. 肉に串を通す。

To put meat through a skewer.

19. 目を通す。

To scan.

20. やりたいことを通す。

To do what one wants.

21. 戻ってきてから、目を通すから。

I'll look over it when I come back.

22. 針に糸を通す。

To thread yarn in a needle.

23. 袖に手が通せるか。

Can you pass your hands through your sleeves?

24. 刺身を氷水に通さなきゃいけない。

You have to pass sashimi through ice water.

25. 彼らに私の中国語は通じませんでした。

I couldn't make myself understood to them in Chinese.

26. 電話が通じなくなりました。

The phone went dead.

- 27a. バスがオースティンとサン・アントニオの間に通じている。  
27b. バスがオースティンとサン・アントニオの間を通して。 (もっと自然)  
The bus runs between Austin and San Antonio.
28. 肉を熱湯に通すと、殺菌できる。  
If you put meat through hot water, you'll sterilize it.
29. 黒いものは熱を通しやすい。  
It is easy for black objects to transmit heat.
30. これは水を通さない。  
This will not let water pass through.
31. 通していただけますか。  
Could you let me through?
32. {火・熱} を通す。  
To heat (food).
33. 我を通す。  
To have one's way.
- 34a. 風を通さないように窓を閉めてください。  
34b. 風が通らないように窓を閉めてください。 (もっと自然)  
In order to not ventilate air, please shut your windows.
35. 肉の中まで火を通す。  
To pass the meat up to the center in the fire.
36. ステーキはよく火を通すべきだ。  
You should cook steak well.
37. 堅を通して僕は彼女と知り合った。  
I got acquainted with her through Ken.
38. 政界で成功したければ、自分の建て前を明確に通さなければなりません。  
If you want to succeed in politics, you have to correctly put in one's official stance.
39. 理屈を通す。  
To correctly arrange the logic (in something).
40. 自己の信念を通すとは真に勇気があるという意味だ。  
Persisting in one's belief is the true definition of courage.
41. 独身で通すのはださいな。  
Remaining single sucks.
- 42a. インターネットを通じてビデオゲームを注文する。(書き言葉)  
42b. インターネットでビデオゲームを注文する。(話し言葉)  
To order video games via the Internet.

43. 全歴史を通じて、東北関東大震災は第5番目のもっとも巨大な地震です。  
Throughout all of history, the Tohoku-Kanto Earthquake Disaster is the 5th largest earthquake.

44. 一年を {通して・通じて}  
Throughout the year

45. 週末を通じて仕上げられるのか。(ちょっと硬い)  
Can you do it over the weekend?

46a. 名刺めいしを差し出して面会を求める。

46b. 刺しを通じて、面会を求める。(Very Rare)

47b. 名刺を通じて、面会を求める。(Rare)  
To present one's card and seek a meeting.

48. 気脈きみゃくを通じる。  
To have secret connections with something/one.

49a. 電流でんりゅうを通じる。

49b. 電流が通じる。(More natural)  
To connect an electric current.

50. あいつは敵てきに通じてる。  
He's colluding with the enemy!

51. そんなことでは社会では通じません。  
In such manner is not accepted in society.

52. 事情じじょうに通じている。  
I'm well-informed of the circumstances.

53. 僕の中国語は通じなかった。  
My Chinese wouldn't get across.

54. 電話が通じなくなった。  
My phone went dead.

55. この道は頂上ちょうじょうに通じている。  
This road leads to the summit.

56. 停電ていでんで何も通じない。  
Nothing will go through due to the blackout.

57. 参議院 {において・で} 法案を通す。  
To pass a bill through the House of Councilors.

58. 立法者たちは米議会で法律を無理矢理通しすぎる。  
Lawmakers pass too many laws forcibly through the US Congress.

59a. 補聴器を通して話が聴けるようになった。(改まった)

59b. 補聴器で話が聴けるようになった。(自然)

I have become able to listen to conversations with a hearing aid.

60. フィルターを通して不純物を除去すればよい。

It is good for you to get rid of impurities through a filter.

61. 昼夜 {を通して・を問わず} 工事を続けた。

(The workers) continued to work on the construction around the clock.

62. 全幕を通して役者を見る。

To see through the entire curtain and watch the actors.

63. 一生独身を通す。

To live one's whole life single.

64a. 傷にオキシドールを塗れば、消毒できるようになります。(もっと自然)

64b. 傷をオキシドールに通して、消毒できるようになります。

If you will pass your wound through hydrogen peroxide, you'll be able to disinfect it.

65a. レインコートの中まで雨が沁みてきた。(もっと自然)

65b. レインコートを通して雨が沁みてきた。

Rain has started to soak in through my raincoat.

66a. 一年中和服で過ごす人は少ない。(自然)

66b. 一年中和服で通す人は少ない。(ちょっと不自然)

There are seldom people that wear traditional Japanese clothing throughout the year.

67. 気持ちが通じる。

To have one's feelings get across.

68a. 世故せこに通つうじている。

68b. 世故にたけている。

I know fully about worldly affairs.

69. 人妻ひとづまと通じる。

To commit adultery.

70. 大便だいべんが通じる。

To have a bowel movement.

71. 自然しぜんであることは幸せに通じている。

Being natural is tied to happiness.

72. 『憶おく』は『臆おく』に通じる。

To not distinguish between 憶 and 臆.

73a. 服装を通して人の風俗を考える。

73b. 服装から人に品位を考える。（もっと自然）

To think about the manners of people through their dress.

74a. 高校生の女子は夜通し語り合った。

74b. 高校生の女子は夜を通して語り合った。（Wordier）

The high school girls talked to each other all through the night.

---

### ～によって VS ～を通して・に通じて

Although mentioned in the lesson about ～によって, there is some interchangeability between ～によって, ～を通じて, and ～を通して with this usage. However, the first places emphasis on the connection between the method and effect/result. The latter two place emphasis on the process.

75. インターネット {～によって・を通じて・を通して}、アルバムを販売する。

To sell albums by/via/through the internet.

76. 選挙 {○ によって・X を通じて・X を通して}委員長になる。

To become the committee chairman by election.

## 第223課: Span: ～にかけて & にわたって

A common error made by students is not understanding the difference between ～から～まで and ～から～にかけて. Then, if they learn about ～にわたって, this quickly becomes confused with ～にかけて. The nouns that students chose before these expressions are also often very problematic. So, this lesson will delve into these issues so that you don't end up making the same mistakes!

### ～から～まで VS ～から～にかけて

First, let's discuss the basic information about ～から～にかけて. This is a less concrete variant of ～から～まで. Both から and まで concretely define beginning and end points, so with the replacement of まで with ～にかけて, you make this less poignant. The main issues, then, will come from not thinking closely enough as to what's practical.

1a. 秋田から大阪まで地震がありました。X

1b. 秋田から大阪にかけて地震がありました。○

There was an earthquake from Akita to Osaka.

2. この道路は夕方5時半から9時にかけて必ず渋滞じゅうたいする。

This road is always congested from 5:30 to 9 in the evening.

3. 青森県から岩手県にかけて震度5の地震が起こりました。

A Shindo scale 5 earthquake occurred from Aomori to Iwate Prefecture.

4a. 午前8時から午後7時にかけて宿題をしました。X

4b. 午前8時から午後7時まで宿題をしました。○

I did my homework from 8 A.M to 7 P.M.

5a. オースティンでは、北側から南側にかけて車で一時間でかかる。X

5b. オースティンでは、北側から南側に行くのに車で一時間かかる。○

In Austin, it takes an hour by car to get from the north side to the south side.

6. テキサスからフロリダにかけて土砂降りに降った。

It down-poured from Texas to Florida.

7. 週末にかけて仕事をする。

To work over the weekend.

## The Meanings of わたる

Before getting to any particular usage of わたる, it's important to know all what it could possibly mean. This gives insight as to what particles and kinds of words that it is to be used with. This, of course, is the primary source of confusion and error by students, so it's very important to pay attention to these things.

#	語義	適当な助詞	書き方
1.	To cross over	を	渡る・渉る
2.	To cross over a route/bridge	を	渡る
3.	One goes to/comes from a far place	に/から	渡る
4.	To pass (by) through things such as the air	を	渡る
5.	To migrate through the sky	を	渡る
6.	To wander about	を	渡る
7.	To live through	を	渡る・亘る・互る
8.	手に渡る = To be handed down	に	渡る
9.	To cover/range/span	に	渡る・亘る・互る
10.	To continue without being interrupted	に	渡る・亘る・互る

**Orthography Note:** This verb regardless of meaning is almost always written as 渡る. Most Japanese people might not even recognize the alternative spellings. So, keep that in mind.

These meanings for the most are interrelated with each other. So, it shouldn't feel as if you're learning over ten completely different usages. Rather, it's just defining with more specificity the kinds of environments that you can find the word in.

---

### Examples

8. 私事に {関かかわる・互わたる} 質問をするのは失礼ですね。

Asking personal questions is rude, isn't it?

9. 橋を渡る。  
To cross a bridge.
10. 通りを向こう側へ渡る。  
To get across the street.
11. 彼は中国へ渡りました。  
He went over to China.
12. その土地は彼女の息子の手に渡った。  
The land was passed down to her son.
13. 世の中をうまく渡っていく。  
To get along living well in the world.
14. 微風そよかぜが梢こずえを渡った。  
The breeze passed through the treetops.
15. 雁かりが空中を渡る。  
Wild geese migrate through the skies.

## ～にわたって

This grammar point is the て形 of usage #9 from the chart above, and as implied, this pattern follows a noun that expresses some quantity in regards to time, parameter, space, etc. The noun that precedesにわたって is quite limited, and the verb phrase that follows deals with continuation.

- 16a. ゴールデンウィークにわたって関東全体を観光した。X  
16b. ゴールデンウィークのあいだ、関東全体を観光した。○  
During Golden week, I went sightseeing through all of Kanto.
- 17a. 老若男女ろうにゃくだんじょにわたって世論調査よろんちょうさが行われました。  
X  
17b. 老若男女すべてに（対して）世論調査が行われました。○  
A public opinion survey was done to men and women of all ages.
18. 五十肩ごじゅうかたかもしれませんけど、肩から腕にかけて、痛くて、重くて……。  
It may be a stiff shoulder, but it's heavy and painful from my shoulder to my arm.
19. 倉田博士は35年にわたって研究を続け、新療法を開発した。  
Professor Kurata continued to research over 35 years and developed a new treatment.
20. その火事は広範囲に渡って損害を与えた。  
The fire gave damage over a vast range.

21. 営業案内が全員に渡った。

A pamphlet of business information was passed out to everyone.

## **Sentence and Word Differences: ～にかけて VS ～にわたって**

As errors arise from incorrect matching of pattern and word choice, we will now example the kind of sentences and words that accompany ～にかけて and ～にわたって.

---

### **Condition: ～から～にかけて。(だから・それで～)**

22. 今晚から明朝にかけて台風が上陸します。海岸寄りの皆さんは高潮に警戒してください。

The typhoon will reach landfall from this evening to tomorrow morning.  
Everyone along the coast please take caution with high tide.

This could be reworded in a sentence that more explicitly shows reasoning.  
In this manner, it is possible to see ～から～にかけては.

23. 今晚から明朝にかけて台風が上陸するので、海岸寄りの皆さんは高潮に警戒してください。

The typhoon will reach landfall from this evening to tomorrow morning, so everyone along the coast please take caution with high tide.

24. 豪雪が予測されるので、北海道から福島県にかけては注意が必要です。

Since heavy snow is expected, warning is needed from Hokkaido to Fukushima Prefectures.

**Pattern Note:** The pattern ～にかけては is quite different from above. Rather than showing a temporal or spatial range, it is followed by expressions of high evaluation regarding ability, strength, etc. In this sense, it can be translated as “regarding”.

25. 彼は法律にかけては欠けている。

He lacks regarding to the (knowledge of the) law.

26. ラーメン作りにかけては王さんの右に出る人はいない。

In regards to ramen making, there is no one superior to Mr. Wang.

---

### **Condition: Clause concerning the course of a condition + ～にわたって + Effect**

The effect doesn't necessarily have to be bad. However, most usages of ～にわたって fit pretty well within this framework.

27. 15年にわたって遺跡の調査が行われた。その結果、このあたりは奈良時代の住居の跡だということがわかってきた。

An excavation inquiry has gone on for a span of 15 years. As a result, we have come to understand that this area is the remains of Nara Period dwellings.



---

## Word Notes:

1. Words that ～にかけて **easily follows**: Words of time/place such as ～日, ～時, ～県.
2. Words that easily **follow** ～にかけて: Verbs that describe something happening: 降る, 起こる, ある, 発生する, 等.
3. Words that ～にわたって **easily follows**: Words of some parameter such as 長年, 全般, ～年, 将来, 範囲, 等.
4. Words that easily **follow** ～にわたって: Verbs of continuation: 続ける, 記録する, 継続する, 行(な)う, 等.

## 第224課: ～によって

When we learned about the agent marker に, we learned how several functions of に are interrelated. From its basic definition of showing where something exists, に by extension marks the existence of an agent. As we learned in that lesson and the lessons that followed, に marks the agent of stative-transitive, passive sentences, and causative predicates.

At the conclusion of our discussion on how に functions as an agent, we learned that に can in fact follow verbal expressions. By doing so, the verb becomes grammatically nominalized, but because the resultant noun is still verbal in nature, the “agent” becomes interpreted as a reason/purpose/cause for the main predicate of the sentence. Thus, the purpose-marker is born.

In Lesson 115, we briefly discussed how ～によって can be used to mark the agent. This is the combination of the agent-marker に and よる, which has various nuances including “to be caused by/to depend on/to be based on.” At its basic understanding, it helps fully establish that something is an agent, especially when other usages of に are present.

### ～によって・により

1. 原因 (Cause) ・ 理由 (Reason): The first usage of ～によって is to objectively and indifferently present cause/reason. This speech pattern, thus, is not used so much in general conversation due to its lack of emotion. It is, however, perfectly appropriate for speaking in a technical manner.

In English, this usage translates as “due to.” Whenever it is used to directly modify a noun, you use ～による (Exs. 3-6).

**Spelling Note:** The Kanji spelling for this nuance is に因って.

1. 踏切ふみきりでの大おおきな衝突事故しょうとつじこによって、運行うんこうに20にじゅう時間じかんの遅おくれが出でた。

Due to a large collision at the railroad crossing, a 20-hour delay came out in operations.

2. このビルは大地震おおじしん {によって・で} ばらばらに破壊はかいされた。  
This building was destroyed to pieces [by/in] the big earthquake.

3. 過失かしつによる人身事故じんしんじこ  
Traffic accident caused by a blunder

4. 大地震おおじしんによる家屋倒壊かおくとうかいは、すでに一万戸いちまんこを超  
こえているといわれる。  
It's said that the number of homes that collapsed due to the big earthquake has already  
surpassed 10,000 homes.

5. 福島原発事故ふくしまげんぱつじこによる放射能環境汚染ほうしゃのうかんきょう  
おせん  
Environmental radioactivity pollution caused by the Fukushima Nuclear  
Accident

6. 牛うしインフルエンザによる死亡者しばうしゃが続出ぞくしゅつしています。  
Deaths are occurring one after another due to cow influenza.

---

2. 手段 (Method): によって can also be used in the sense of “by” to express  
method. This usage has considerable overlap with the particle で, but  
because によって deals heavily in showing agents of happenstance, when  
method is being used in a way that is not a speaker literally using a tool/  
method, then only によって would be appropriate.

When modifying nouns directly with this meaning, ～によって takes either the  
form ～による or ～によっての.

7. インターネットにより世界せかいのニュースを知しる。  
To know the world news by the Internet.

8. インターネット {によって・で}、人間にんげんは居いながらにして、世界せかいを  
概観がいかんできる。  
Through/with the internet, people can stay seated as they can survey the  
world.

9. 投票とうひょう {によって・で} 決めよう。  
Let's decide by vote.

10. 大抵たいていの成功せいこうは不断ふだんの努力どりよくによって得えられる。  
Most success is gained by ceaseless effort.

---

### ～によって VS ～を通じて・通して

There is some interchangeability between ～によって, ～を通じて, and ～を通し  
て with Usage 2. ～によって places emphasis on the connection between the  
method and effect/result, which is in line with how the agent-maker に  
behaves. The latter two phrases, on the other hand, place emphasis on the  
process.

12. インターネット {によって・を通つうじて・を通とおして}、アルバムを販売はな  
ばいする。

To sell albums by/via/through the Internet.

13. 選挙せんきょ {○ によって・X を通つうじて・X を通とおして} 委員長いいん  
ちょうになる。

To become the committee chairman by election.

---

3. 受身の動作主 (Agent of a Passive Structure): As we have already learned about, ～によって can be used with the passive form of a verb to show the agent (doer). If a sentence with a receiver (indirect object) is passivized, the agent must be marked by ～によって. Additionally, ～による is the only acceptable attribute form for this usage.

14. 田中たなかさん {○ によって・X に} 岡田おかださんに手紙てがみが書かかれ  
た。

A letter was written to Mr. Okada by Mr. Tanaka.

15. その仕事しごとは加藤かとうさんによってなされました。

The work was done by Mr. Kato.

16. ライトアップ {によって・で} 夢想的むげんてきな光景こうけいが生うみ出だされ  
た。

A dreamy scenery was created by/with a light-up.

17. 松本清張まつもとせいちょうによる小説しょうせつ

A novel by Matsumoto Seichō

---

4. 根拠 (Proof)・拠り所 (Basis): Following a rule/law/example/precedent/  
previous example/etc., it is used a lot to clearly show proof/basis. In this  
usage, ～による is the only acceptable attribute form. This should only be  
used when something clear is understood. It should not be used for mere  
hearsay.

18. 証言しょうげんによる真実しんじつ

Truth according to testimony

19. 前例ぜんれい {による・に基もとづく} 判決はんけつが下くだされることになる。

A judgment is to be made based on precedent.

---

5. 場合 (Circumstance)・相応変化 (Reasonable Change): This usage is perhaps  
the most common in the spoken language, equating to “depending on...”  
Both ～による and ～によっての are correct attribute forms, although the  
latter is more common in the spoken language.

20. 天候てんこうによっては中止ちゅうしもありえるでしょう。

Depending on the weather conditions, (the match) may possibly be canceled.

21. 時ときと場合ばあいには {よっての・よる} 対処たいしょ  
Approach which depends on the time and circumstance

22. お金かねによって、人ひとは変かわるものです。  
People change depending on money.

23. この仕事しごとは販売数はんばいすうによって給料きゅうりょうが変かわります。  
As for this job, one's salary changes depending on sales.

24. 板前長いたまえちょうの腕うでによって、寿司すしの味あじの良よし悪しが左右さ  
ゆうされます。  
The quality of the flavor of sushi is dependent on the skill of the chef.

25. 含ふくまれる材料ざいりょうによって、いろいろな味あじのラーメンがあります。  
There are many flavors of ramen based on the ingredients put in it.

26. 人ひとによって考かんがえが違ちがいます。  
Opinions vary from person to person.

27. 挨拶言葉あいさつことばはその日ひの天気てんきによっていろいろ言いえばよい。  
It's best to say that there are various greetings based on the weather of the day.

28. 曜日ようびによって授業じゅぎょうが変かわります。  
Classes change depending on the day of the week.

29. 人ひとによって好すきなものと嫌きらいなものは異ことなります。  
One's likes and dislikes differ from person to person.

30. 「でも、すごいよ。二階にかいの人ひとが歩あるくと、天井てんじょうがみしみ  
しって鳴なるの。窓枠まどわくも木きだし、風向かざむきによってはかたかた鳴なっ  
て、すきま風かぜが入はいってくるみたい。ドアなんか、鍵なんかなくても体当たりす  
れば開きそうよ」

"But, it's dreadful! When the people on the second-floor walk, the ceiling creaks. The  
window frame is made of wood, which makes it clatter in the wind, and it's like a draft is  
coming in. The door, it seems like it'll open if you charge at it even if there wasn't a

## ～によらず

～ず is an old negative auxiliary, and when it is paired with ～による, the  
resulting phrase gives a meaning of "in any situation everything/despite/  
regardless".

31. 何事なにごとによらず注意ちゅういが肝心かんじんだ。  
No matter what, attention is crucial.

32. 誰だれによらず人ひとの不始末ふしまつの尻拭しりぬぐいなどしたくはないよ。  
No matter who it is, I don't want to reap the harvests off other people's  
misconduct.

## ～によると・によったら・によれば

### ～によると

Also seen as ～によりますと in extremely polite/formal speech, the most common usage of this is to mean "according to".

33. 新聞しんぶんによると台風たいふうが接近中せっきんちゅうだった。  
According to the newspaper, the typhoon was approaching.

34. (天気てんき) 予報よほうによりますと、明日あしたは晴はれるそうです。  
According to the weather report, it'll clear up tomorrow.

35. ニュースによると、朝あさは晴はれだそうだ。  
According to the news, morning will be clear skies.

36. 電灯でんとうの発明はつめいはエジソンによるとされている。  
The invention of electric light is credited to Edison.

---

### ～によれば

A more direct and personal means of saying "according to" is ～によれば.

37.

お母かあさま方がたのために

古事記こじき、日本書紀にほんしょき(記紀きき)によれば、伊弉諾尊いざなぎのみこと(男神だんしん)、伊弉冉尊いざなみみこと(女神めがみ)二柱ふたはしらの大神おおがみによる国生くにうみの神話しんわは、日本にほんの国土誕生物語こくどたんじょうものがたりです。私わたしたち日本人にほんじんの祖先そせんは、日本にほんの国土こくどは神様かみさまがお生うみになり、住すみやすく良よい国くにに作つくりあげられたものと信しんじていました。ですから、日本にほんの国土こくどに住すむ日本人にほんじんは、すべて神様かみさまの子こととしてかたく結むすばれている意識いしきが非常に強かったのです。

For Mothers

According to the Kojiki and Nihon Shoki (Kiki), the tale of the birth of our nation by the two-great kami Izanagi (male kami) and Izanami (female kami), is the creation story of Japan. Our Japanese ancestors that the kami created the Japanese land to make a great and easy to live country. That is why Japanese people living in the land of Japan felt a strong and tight binding connection to the land as all being children of the kami.

**Citation Note:** From かみさまのおはなし.

---

### ～によったら

～によったら would directly translate as "if it were according to." It is most common in the set phrase ことによったら, meaning "perhaps."

38. {ことによると・ことによったら} 列車れっしゃが停止ていしするかもしれません。

Perhaps the train might halt.

## 第225課: ～ざるを得ない & やむを得ない

The を in these phrases is not the case particle you are used to. Here, it is a conjunctive particle, which is a usage from Classical Japanese that remains in these expressions. Pay attention to what phrases these phrases are similar and the things that make them different.

**漢字 Note:** The やむ in やむを得ない can be written in 漢字 as 止む or 已む.

### ～ざるを得ない

～ざる is the 連体形れんたいけい of the classical/old-fashioned negative auxiliary verb 得ず; thus, this pattern attaches to the 未然形みぜんけい. 得えない is the negative form of 得る. Put together, ～ざるを得ない means "there is no other choice but to". As for する and 来る, you must use the せ- and こ- 未然形 respectively because we are using an older ending. So, **never say** しざる.

する → せざる

来る → 来ざる

Common questions in regards to this pattern include what the subject of the sentence is, when it is appropriate to use the pattern, and how the pattern differs from the "must phrases".

This phrase has a negative tone, and it should not be used in situations where such implications would be inappropriate. The action is something that the agent does not truly want to do. There is also some outside force that is making the agent act.

Although this is typically more common in the written language, it is still occasionally used in the spoken language. In this case, it is often followed by things like ～だろう・でしょう, ～（ん）じゃないか, ～と思う, 等.

---

### Examples

1. . . . . ということを認めとめざるを得ません。

We have no other choice but to recognize...

2. 悪天候あくてんこうのため、我々われわれはピクニックを中止ちゅうしせざるを得なかったです。

There was no other choice but to call off the picnic due to the weather.

3. このコンピューターが壊れたら、新しいのを買わざるを得ないよ。  
If this computer breaks, there is no other choice but to buy a new one.
4. 歯医者はいしゃさんに行かざるを得ない。  
There's no other choice but to go to the dentist.
5. 僕が引き受けざるを得ないじゃないか。  
There's no other way but me having to undertake it, no?
6. 海外旅行に行くと、自分がアメリカ人であることを意識せざるを得ない。  
When you travel overseas, you have no other choice but to be conscious of the fact that you are an American.
7. 生徒が試験に失敗をすれば、先生は責任を取らざるを得ない。  
If the student fails an exam, the student has no choice but to take responsibility.
8. 社長からの命令なので、やらざるを得ません。  
Since this is an order from the company president, I have no choice but to do it.
- 9a. この問題はもう一度検討しざるを得ない。X  
9b. この問題はもう一度検討せざるを得ない。○  
We have no choice but to examine this problem one more time.

### やむを得ない

止やむを得ない shows that something is inevitable. We don't attach it to anything like the phrase above because 止む is a verb--the intransitive form of やめる.

10. それは恐おそらく止むを得なかったのだろう。  
It was perhaps inevitable.
11. 止むを得ない理由の遅刻ちこくだから。  
It's because of inevitable delays.

### 第225課: ～ざるを得ない & やむを得ない

The を in these phrases is not the case particle you are used to. Here, it is a conjunctive particle, which is a usage from Classical Japanese that remains in these expressions. Pay attention to what phrases these phrases are similar and the things that make them different.

漢字 **Note:** The やむ in やむを得ない can be written in 漢字 as 止む or 已む.

### ～ざるを得ない

～ざる is the 連体形れんたいけい of the classical/old-fashioned negative auxiliary verb ～ず; thus, this pattern attaches to the 未然形みぜんけい. 得えない is the negative form of 得る. Put together, ～ざるを得ない means "there is

no other choice but to". As for する and 来る, you must use the せ- and こ- 未然形 respectively because we are using an older ending. So, **never say** しざる.

する → せざる

来る → 来ざる

Common questions in regards to this pattern include what the subject of the sentence is, when it is appropriate to use the pattern, and how the pattern differs from the "must phrases".

This phrase has a negative tone, and it should not be used in situations where such implications would be inappropriate. The action is something that the agent does not truly want to do. There is also some outside force that is making the agent act.

Although this is typically more common in the written language, it is still occasionally used in the spoken language. In this case, it is often followed by things like ～だろう・でしょう, ～（ん）じゃないか, ～と思う, 等.

---

### **Examples**

1. . . . ということを読みとめざるを得ません。

We have no other choice but to recognize...

2. 悪天候あくてんこうのため、我々われわれはピクニックを中止ちゅうしせざるを得なかったです。

There was no other choice but to call off the picnic due to the weather.

3. このコンピューターが壊れたら、新しいのを買わざるをえないよ。

If this computer breaks, there is no other choice but to buy a new one.

4. 歯医者はいしゃさんに行かざるを得ない。

There's no other choice but to go to the dentist.

5. 僕が引き受けざるを得ないじゃないか。

There's no other way but me having to undertake it, no?

6. 海外旅行に行くと、自分がアメリカ人であることを意識せざるをえない。

When you travel overseas, you have no other choice but to be conscious of the fact that you are an American.

7. 生徒が試験に失敗をすれば、先生は責任を取らざるをえない。

If the student fails an exam, the student has no choice but to take responsibility.

8. 社長からの命令なので、やらざるを得ません。

Since this is an order from the company president, I have no choice but to do it.



9a. この問題はもう一度検討しざるを得ない。X

9b. この問題はもう一度検討せざるを得ない。○

We have no choice but to examine this problem one more time.

### やむを得ない

止やむを得ない shows that something is inevitable. We don't attach it to anything like the phrase above because 止む is a verb--the intransitive form of やめる.

10. それは恐おそらく止むを得なかったのだろう。

It was perhaps inevitable.

11. 止むを得ない理由の遅刻ちこくだから。

It's because of inevitable delays.

## 第227課: Intransitive Verbs Translated in the Passive Voice

There are many times when an intransitive verb is technically translated with an English passive expression. For instance, 決まる, the first verb we'll be looking at, can either be translated as "to be decided/settled." However, just because it's translated as this doesn't mean that there isn't a transitive passive equivalent with a different nuance. In this lesson, a handful of these kinds of verbs will be looked at carefully so that you may get the sense of when to use which.

### 決まる vs 決められる

The verbs 決まる and 決める create an intransitive-transitive verb pair meaning "to be decided/to decide." However, 決められる (to be decided) also exists. This means that one must truly look at the meanings of both 決まる and 決める carefully to make tales of how 決まる and 決められる may differ.

Firstly, it's important to understand that although they share basic meanings, there are plenty of instances that only one or the other may be used.

---

決まる indicates a matter that is fixated/settled upon as a natural conclusion. The agent of the action, even if one exists, is not emphasized at all. 決める is the opposite of this. The agent is emphasized and its presence is felt in any form that it takes.

1. 裁判さいばんで有罪ゆうざいが決まった国会議員こっかいぎいんは議員ぎいんを辞やめさせられます。

The Diet member whose guilty verdict was decided in court will be made to resign his seat.

2. どうにも腹はらが決きまらない。

I can't make up my mind.

**Idiom Note:** In Japanese, “to make up one’s mind” is 腹を決める. Essentially, the Japanese use the “gut” as the reference point for gut decisions. The reason why 決める is switched to 決まる in Ex. 2 is to emphasize the lack of control the speaker has in making up his own mind. This incapability goes well with the lack of volition that 決まる has in the outcome of things.

3. 毎晩まいばん、決まった時間じかんに尿意によういで起おきます。

Every evening, I wake up at a fixed time to go pee.

4. 予あらかじめ講師こうしと交渉こうしょうして日時にちじを決めてください。

Negotiate with your lecturer beforehand and decide upon a date and time.

5. ピンクのスーツで決めましょう。

Dress up nicely with a pink suit.

**Meaning Note:** 決める can be used to mean “to dress up (nicely).” 決まる may also be used to indicate that one’s attire/appearance is good looking.

6. スクイズを決め、3さん点てんを奪取だっしゅした。

(The player) successfully carried out a squeeze and took back three points.

---

One pattern that 決まる is only used in is に決まっている. This is a highly subjective statement used to indicate that whatever it follows is undoubtedly so without a shadow of a doubt. This attaches directly after nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

7. 話はなしが矛盾むじゅんだらけで本人ほんにんが犯人はんにんに決まっているでしょう。

(His) story is littered with contradictions; it’s without a doubt that he himself is the criminal.

8. 台風たいふうが来くれば、電車でんしゃは遅おくれるに決まっている。

When a typhoon comes, it’s a guarantee that the trains will be late.

---

決める, when used in に決める, is very similar to にする. The use of 決める over する is used to emphasize the decision aspect.

9. 青汁あおじるを飲のむことに決めました。

I have decided to drink aojiru.

**Word Note:** 青汁 is a Japanese drink made from green leafy vegetables. An American equivalent would be something like V8.

10a. マサチューセッツ州しゅうへ留学りゅうがくすることに {決めた・した} 。

I’ve decided to study abroad at Massachusetts.

10b. マサチューセッツ州しゅうに留学りゅうがくすることを決めた。

I’ve decided to study abroad at Massachusetts.

**Grammar Note:** Although it’s not wrong to have two に phrases in one sentence, whenever it can be helped, one of the に usually has to go. In 10a.

the particle へ is used, but in 10b. the first に is kept and 決める is preceded by を. The nuance difference of using を instead of に indicates that the decider had at least more than one option and after some thought chose. The use of に does not imply a decision process from multiple options. Incidentally, the use of the particle を can emphasize satisfaction to the decision (See Ex. 11 below).

11. 大分おおいたに残のこることを決めました。  
I've decided to stay in Ōita.

---

When に決めている is after a noun, it shows what is always decided upon.

12. 家族かぞくが集あつまるときはドライブイン鳥とりに決めています。  
When the family gathers, we make a habit of going to Drivein-Tori.

13. 一日いちにちの小遣こづかいは昼食だちゅうしょくこみで1000円えんに決めています。  
Daily allowance is set to 1000 yen including lunch.

---

The difference between using こと or よう before に決める is rather small. With こと, you demonstrate what you've decided to do. With よう, you demonstrate what you're determined to try to do.

14. 一緒いっしょにプレイしない {こと・よう} に決めている。  
[We've settled/we're determined] not to play together.

---

In the realm of sports, 決める can indicate a successful move. In the realm of martial arts, it can mean "to immobilize" with certain techniques. As for 決まる, its use in sports indicates that a match is settled.

15. 問かんぬきに決めているように見みえるが、完全かんぜんに決まっていない。  
It appears that (he) is immobilized from the overhook, but (the match) is not entirely settled.

---

As for 決められる, one thing that must be noted is that sometimes it is simply the potential form of 決める.

16. 一人ひとりで決められずにいたのですが、やっと決められました。  
I had been unable to decide on my own, but I've finally been able to decide.

---

決められる always implies an agent even if it isn't explicitly expressed. In Ex. 17, the 'indirect passive' is used. This is because the speaker is upset that what was to become of his/her dental treatment was decided by the doctor without full consent. In the rest of the examples that follow, 決められる is used as a normal passive verb with the agent either expressed or readily obvious.

17. 歯はの治療方針ちりょうほうしんを勝手かってに決められました。  
My dental treatment plan was arbitrarily decided.

18. 西暦せいき325さんびゃくにじゅうご年ねんには、第一だいいちニカイアにかい  
あ公会議こうかいぎが行おこなわれ、「春分しゅんぶんの日ひ」が3さん月がつ21に  
じゅういち日にちに決められた。  
In the year 325 AD, the First Council of Nicaea was convened, and the  
Vernal Equinox was decided upon to be March 21<sup>st</sup>.

19. 参加国さんかこくの投票とうひょうにより、グリニッジ天文台てんもんだいを通と  
おる子午線しごせんを経度けいど0れい度どとすることが決められました。  
By vote from participating countries, the prime meridian was decided upon  
to be the meridian that goes through the Greenwich Observatory.

20. 1982せんきゅうひゃくはちじゅうに年ねんに「海洋法かいようほうに関かんする  
国際連合条約こくさいれんごうじょうやく」が作つくられ、領海りょうかい12じゅ  
うに海里以内かいりいないとすることが決められました。  
The United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea was created in 1982,  
and the extent of national waters was set to be within 12 nautical miles.

## 定まる vs 定められる

定まる and 定める are more formal equivalents to 決まる and 決める. For instance, 定まる can also indicate that a decision has been settled. However, 定まる implies that a certain situation is maintained by said decision. When 定められる is used, as was the case for 決められる, the agent is either explicitly stated or obvious and there is volition behind the action. There is no volition implied with 定まる.

21. 運命うんめいが定さだまっているわけではない。  
It is not the case that one's destiny is fixed.

22. 民進党政権みんしんとうせいけんの焦点しょうてんが定さだまった。  
The focus of the Democratic Party of Japan has been set.

23. 桓武天皇かんむてんのうはなぜ京都きょうとに都みやこを定さだめたのでしょうか。  
Why is that Emperor Kanmu set the capital to Kyoto?

24. 各州かくしゅうおよび市しなどの税務当局ぜいむとうきょくが独自どくじの税制ぜい  
いせいを定さだめている。  
Each state and city tax authority sets its own system of taxation.

25. その瞳ひとみは、まるで獲物えものに狙ねらいを定さだめた虎とらの目めだ。  
Those eyes were like that of a tiger's locked onto its prey.

---

In the following examples, 定まる would not be used instead. 定められる happens to be the verb of choice in technical circumstances. This is likely because the agent needs to be unambiguous.

26. 法律ほうりつで定さだめられた勤務時間きんむじかんの上限じょうげんを知りたいのです。

I want to know the upper limit on working hours set by law.

27. 「食品表示基準しょくひんひょうじきじゅん」で定さだめられた名称めいしょうが記載きさいされている。

The names set by the “Food Product Labeling Standards” are listed.

## 焦げる vs 焦がされる

焦げる is a verb meaning “to be burned” by some sort of fire or heat. Its transitive equivalent is 焦がす. The transitive version, however, can be used in non-literal expressions, widening its range of usage. 焦がされる gets used to mean “to get burned” by the fault of someone or something. The agent, then, is emphasized with it. With 焦げる, there is no ‘culprit’ involved.

28. 料理りょうりをしていて、うっかり鍋なべやフライパンを焦しょうがしてしまったことはありませんか。

Have you ever unintentionally burned at pot or frying pan while cooking?

29. アイロンでワイシャツが焦こげてしまった。

The white shirt got burnt by the iron.

30. ライターで髪かみを焦こがされてしまったのですが、髪かみの毛けが焦こげてしまったとき、どのようなケアをすればいいのでしょうか。

My hair got burnt by someone with a lighter, and so what sort of care should you do when your hair gets burned?

31. 旦那様のご経験に食材を火に入れすぎて焦がされてしまったことはございませんか。

In your experiences with your husband, have you ever had a situation where he heated the ingredients for too long and burned them?

**Grammar Note:** Ex. 31 is a perfect example demonstrating a bridging context for how one can see the interconnection between light honorifics and the passive. In this case, 焦がされる should be interpreted as the light honorific form of 焦がす, but interpreting as the passive does not really alter the meaning of the sentence.

32. 太陽たいように焦こがされて火照ほてった。

I was flushed from the sun.

## かかる vs かけられる

The verb かかる and かける as we know have many usages. The most basic meaning of the two is “to be hung” and “to hang” respectively. The former has no volition entailed in it. However, かける always does. Thus, when you use かけられる, the agent of the action is always implied if it isn’t explicitly stated.

**Orthography Note:** As the sentences below demonstrate, かかる and かける have various spellings depending on nuance.

33. 10じゅう万円まんえんの賞金しょうきんが懸かかっている。  
There is a prize for 100,000 yen.

34. テーブルの上うえの壁かべに掛かけられた鏡かがみが、彼女かのじょの目を惹ひいた。  
The mirror hung up on the wall above the table caught her eye.

35. 他人たにんからかけられた呪のろいを跳はね返かえすにはどうすればいいでしょうか。  
What should I do to repel a spell cast on me by someone?

36. キリストは、何故なぜ、十字架じゅうじかに架かけられたのでしょうか。  
Why was it that Christ was put on the cross?

37. 空そらに見事みごとな虹にじが架かかっている。  
There is a magnificent rainbow suspended in the sky.

38. ホテルには夜景やけいを描かいた絵かいが掛かかっている。  
There is a picture of the nightscape hung up in the hotel.

## 伝わる vs 伝えられる

伝わる is an intransitive verb meaning “to be handed down/transmitted/circulated” and its transitive counterpart is 伝える, which is typically translated as “to convey/transmit/communicate/propagate.” 伝わる does not imply personal volition, and so whenever there is an agent with volition involved, when used in a passive sense, 伝えられる becomes your choice.

39. 言いいたいことが伝つたわらない。  
I can't get across what I want to say.

40. 我わが家やに代々伝だいたいつたわるレシピをご紹介しますかいします。  
I will introduce a recipe passed down from generation to generation in my family.

41. 上うえからの音おとは壁かべを伝つたわって聞きこえてきます。  
Noise from above can be heard through the walls.

42. ダイヤモンドは熱ねつをよく伝つたえると言われます。  
It's say that diamonds conduct heat well.

43. 仏教ぶっきょうは朝鮮人ちょうせんじんによって日本にほんに伝つたえられた。  
Buddhism was propagated to Japan by Koreans.

44. 中国大陸ちゅうごくたいりくや朝鮮半島ちょうせんはんとうから移住いじゅうした人々ひとびとによって、日本列島にほんれっとうに稲作いなさくが伝つたえられました。  
Rice cultivation was propagated to the Japanese Archipelago by people who had migrated there from Mainland China and the Korean Peninsula.

## 集まる vs 集められる

To “gather/assemble” in the intransitive sense is 集まる. In the transitive sense, it’s 集める. Because the intransitive sense can also be translated in English as “to be gathered,” some may confuse it with the passive of the transitive form, 集められる. However, as continues to be the case for all the other examples in this lesson, 集められる has an agent, and the action involved is done by the volition of said agent. 集まる has no volition entailed.

45. 食卓しょくたくにはいつも、世界中せかいじゅうから様々さまざまな食材しょくざいが集あつまっています。

There are always various ingredients from all over the world gathered on the dinner table.

46. 安倍内閣あべないかくに支持しじが集あつまっている状況じょうきょうだ。

The circumstance is that support is gathering for Abe’s cabinet.

47. あのひとの周まわりには常つねに人ひとが集あつまっている。

There are always people gathered around that person.

48. 顧客こきゃくからの苦情くじょうがたくさん集あつまられている。

Tons of complaints are being gathered from customers.

49. 献血けんけつによって集あつまられた血液けつえきはどのようなルートで患者かんじゃに輸血ゆけつされるんですか。

Through what sort of routes do the blood that is gathered by donations transfused into patients?

## 収まる vs 収められる

The verb 収まる can be translated as “to settle into/be settled into/installed/in one’s place.” Essentially, it refers to things being in place and settled. That’s why it can even refer to a weapon being sheathed. When used to refer to payment having been paid, it’s spelled as 納まる. Conversely, 収める・納める handles the transitive twist of these meanings. As is the case with all the other verbs, 収まる・納まる has no volition. Therefore, 収められる・納められる is the correct passive expression when there is a willful agent involved.

50. 満腹まんぷくなのに胃いに収おさまっていく。

Even despite being full, it smoothly settles in one’s stomach.

51. 2に年以内ねんいないに99きゅうじゅうきゅう. てん2に%パーセントの納おさめるべき税額ぜいがくが国庫こっくに納おさめまっているということになります。

99.2% of the taxes that you ought to pay within two years is paid to the national treasury.

52. 刀かたなを鞘さやに収おさめる。

To sheathe a sword.

53. 中世の重要な資料や遺産などが収められている。

Important medieval materials and heritage items are dedicated (here).

54. 壁かべの穴あなの中なかに仏像ぶつぞうが納おさめられています。  
Buddha statues are installed in the holes of the walls.

## 混ざる・混じる vs 混ぜられる

まざる and まじる both mean “to be blended/mixed.” まざる is closer to “to be blended” whereas まじる is closer to “to be mixed.” The use of the character 混 is to emphasize things being mixed but technically separate whereas the character 交 is used to emphasize that things are blended together as one. Both まざる and まじる have zero volition. It is まぜられる that you need to use for when things are mixed together with an active agent.

55. この生地きじにナイロンが {混・交} ざっている。  
Nylon is blended into this fabric.

56. 辛味からみの少すくない野菜やさいカレーを混ませればマイルドな味あじわいになります。  
If you mix in a vegetable curry, which has little spice, it becomes a mild flavor.

57. 痰たんに血ちが混まじっている。  
Blood is mixed in the phlegm.

58. 大小だいしょうの建物たてもものが入いり {混・交} じっている。  
Buildings big and small are mixed together.

59. 給食室きゅうしょくしつの蛇口じゃぐちから出でた水道水すいどうすいに黒くろい異物いぶつが {混入こんにゅうして・混まじって・雑ざつじって・} いた。  
A black foreign substance was mixed in the tap-water from the faucet in the lunch room.

**Spelling Note:** When used for saying that a foreign substance is mixed in with something, the spelling 雑ざる may occasionally be used.

60. 油あぶらで混まぜられた絵えの具ぐで絵えを描かく。  
To draw a picture with coloring materials mixed with oil.

---

Of course, 混ぜられる can also be the potential form of 混ぜる.

61. ジュースにも混まぜられるからいいですね。  
It's good because you can also mix it in juice.

## 育つ vs 育てられる

The verb 育つ means “to grow up.” Because it can also be translated as “to be raised/brought up,” some confuse it with 育てられる. However, there is no active agent with 育つ. To express an active agent in the passive sense, 育てられる, the passive form of the transitive form, needs to be used. Of course, there is also the fact that 育てられる may also be used as the potential form of 育てる.



62. 僕ぼくが育そだった町まちに少すこしでも何なにか貢献こうけんしたいなと思おもっています。

I'd like to donate something back, even if it's just a little, to the town I grew up in.

63. 私わたしは東京とうきょうで生うまれて、大阪おおさかで育そだちました。

I was born in Tokyo and raised in Ōsaka.

64. 動物どうぶつに育そだてられた人ひとって本当ほんとうにいるの？

Is it really true that there are people who were raised by animals?

65. 猿さるの一族いちぞくに育そだてられました。

I was raised by a family of monkeys.

## 第228課: 自受動詞

In this lesson, we will discuss a handful of verbs that are called 自受動詞. These verbs are naturally passive-like intransitive verbs, and they incidentally share some level of interchangeability with their transitive verb pair passive forms. In this lesson, we will study the following verb forms:

- 見つかる vs 見つけられる
- 捕まる vs 捕まえられる
- 負ける vs 負かされる
- やぶれる vs やぶられる
- 知れる vs 知られる

A key requirement to be a 自受動詞 is that the number of required parts (arguments) in the sentence must be the same as when it's written in a transitive fashion.

i. [I] lost [to John].

ii. [I] was beaten [by John].

Just from looking at English, we can see that 負ける and 負かされる qualify as 自受動詞. Another requirement is that there be two arguments in the sentence for both means of phrasing. 負ける and 負かされる help make 負ける qualify to be a 自受動詞.

Before delving into examples, it is important to understand what defines the differences between the first and second options. When using a 自受動詞, you are inherently being more objective. Using the transitive passive forms requires that you be more specific about what is going on. This is because using these forms implies a far higher level of subjectivity. Grounding your statement with specifics is a natural means of providing legitimacy to what you're saying. This logic is what defines the naturalness and nuance splicing of deciding between a 自受動詞 and a transitive passive verb of the same thing.

## 見つかる vs 見つけれれる

The intransitive verb 見つかる creates an intransitive-transitive verb pair with 見つける. The verb 見つかる indicates the rather spontaneous finding of something. It lacks volition and, again, implies that the act of finding was incidental in nature. It is very objective as an effect. However, 見つける is the willful act of having found something. In other words, what the agent finds was actively sought out. As such, its passive form 見つけれれる has volition, an active agent, and a high level of subjectivity, all characteristics that 見つかる lacks.

1. きのう夕方ゆうがた、家出いえでした行方不明ゆくえふめいの学生がくせいが近所きんじょの人ひとに {見みつかりました・見みつけられました}。  
Yesterday evening, the missing student who had run away was found by someone in the neighborhood.

**Sentence Note:** When 見つかる is used, the discovery sounds incidental. When 見つけれれる is used, the person found was actively sought out. The question “who found the person” also becomes more likely to be raised. If it’s just 見つかる, then the listener is more likely to react, “oh, the person was found.” If it’s 見つけれれる, then the listener is more likely to react, “Huh, I wonder who found the person, probably the police looking for him.”

2. 未成年みせいねんにタバコを販売はんばいしたのが警察けいさつに {見みつかりました・見みつけられました}。  
I was caught by the police selling tobacco to a minor.

**Spelling Note:** タバコ can also be spelled as たばこ or 煙草.

**Sentence Note:** When 見つかる is used, it sounds as if the police incidentally found out about the speaker selling the tobacco to a minor. The sentence simply states the situation of the police finding out. Not much more can be gleaned from the statement, but not much more is necessarily going to be asked of by a listener. When 見つけれれる is used, it sounds like the police actively tried snatching the establishment when the worker made the mistake of selling the tobacco to the minor.

3. 信号無視しんごうむしをしていたら、警察けいさつに見みつかりました。  
Just as I was ignoring the traffic signal, I was caught by the police.

**Sentence Note:** In this sentence, the speaker was caught ignoring a traffic signal meant for a pedestrian. A policeman was incidentally there to notice the speaker flagrantly ignoring it and promptly snatched him/her.

4. 失踪者しっそうしゃが、成人せいじんの場合ばあいは、警察けいさつに見みつかったとしても、本人ほんにんの意思いしが尊重そんちょうされます。  
Even if a missing person is found by the police, in the even that the individual is an adult, the person’s intention are respected.

5. 膵臓癌すいぞうがんを早はやいうちに見みつけられた。  
The pancreatic cancer was caught early.

**Sentence Note:** The use of 見つけられる implies an active role of the patient and physician(s) to find the cancer in its early stage.

6. すでに閉店へいてんしている店舗紹介てんぽしょうかいページを見みつけられた場合ばあい、お問とい合あわせフォームよりご連絡ください。  
If you find an introductory page to a store that has already closed, please contact us from our inquiry form.

**Sentence Note:** The 見つけられる in this sentence is simply the light honorific form of 見つける. Of course, this has the same origin as the passive form, which also demonstrates how this usage of ～（ら）れる is only possible with the transitive verb forms here.

**Spelling Note:** すでに may also be spelled as 既に.

7. 住宅じゅうたくが全焼ぜんしょうし、1ひと入りの遺体いたいが見みつかりました。  
The home completely burned up, and one body was found.

8. この女性じょせいは男性だんせいの部屋へやで胸むねに包丁ほうちょうが刺ささった状態じょうたいで見みつかりました。  
The woman was discovered stabbed in the chest with a kitchen knife in the man's room.

9. 自分じぶんに似合にあう色いろってなかなか見みつけられません。  
I can't seem to find a color that suits me.

**Sentence Note:** This 見つけられる utilizes the potential meaning of ～られる.

10a. どうしても仕事しごとが見みつからない。

I simply can't find a job.

10b. どうしても仕事しごとが見みつけられない。

I simply can't find a job.

**Sentence Note:** In 10a, the speaker is making a simple fact-of-the-matter statement that jobs aren't to be found whereas 10b implies an incapability of finding a job.

## 捕まる vs 捕まえられる

The verb 捕まる creates an intransitive-transitive verb pair with 捕まえる for “to be caught” and “to catch” respectively. When 捕まる is used, the objective act of being captured/arrested is what is being described. When 捕まえられる is used, the sentence becomes very subjective. Although it is not always necessary to include by whom the action was done in the sentence, but not including this information will have the listener wondering about more details.

**Orthography Note:** The characters 掴・攔 can be used instead if the person is being forcibly held down.

11a. 繁華街はんかがいの防犯ぼうはんカメラに映うつっていた容疑者ようぎしゃがきょう、県警けんけいに捕つかまった。

Today, the suspect, who had been captured by downtown security cameras, was caught by prefectural police.

11b. 繁華街はんかがいの防犯ぼうはんカメラに映うつっていた容疑者ようぎしゃがきょう、県警けんけいに捕つかまえられた。

Today, the suspect, who had been captured by downtown security cameras, was caught by prefectural police.

11c. 県警けんけいがきょう、繁華街はんかがいの防犯ぼうはんカメラに映うつっていた容疑者ようぎしゃを捕つかまえた。

Today, the prefectural police caught the suspect, who had been captured by downtown security cameras.

12. 世よの中なかには、まだ捕つかまっていない殺人犯さつじんはんが相当そうとういる。

There is a considerable number of criminals in the world who have yet to be caught.

13. ピカチュウを捕つかまえた！

I caught a Pikachu!

14. あいつは万引まんびきで捕つかまえられた。

The guy was caught shoplifting.

15. 犯人はんになは、大通おおどおりを横切よこぎった瞬間しゅんかんに警察けいさつに捕つかまえられた。

The criminal was caught by police the instant he/she tried crossing the boulevard.

16. 未いまだメタモンを捕つかまえられていない人ひとが結構けっこういるようです。

It appears that there are quite a lot of people who haven't been able to catch Ditto yet.

**Sentence Note:** Ex. 16 demonstrates how 捕まえられる, unlike 捕まる, can be used to indicate the potential. It's even possible for it to be used as the light honorific form of 捕まえる. Noticing that particle usage is different for the 'passive' interpretation than it is for the potential and the light honorific interpretations is very important in preventing confusion.

17. 先日せんじつ、友達ともだちが交通違反こうつういはんで捕つかまってしまった。

The other day, my friend got caught for a traffic violation.

18. ついに宇宙人が捕まえられた！

The alien has at last been caught!

I've at last been able to capture the alien!

19. 私わたしは窃盗せつとうで警察けいさつに {逮捕たいほされました・捕つかまえられました}。

I was arrested by police for theft.

**Sentence Note:** When 捕まえられる is used, Ex. 19 sounds like the speaker had been actively sought and then arrested. Perhaps the speaker had been caught close to the scene after a short chase. 逮捕される, on the other hand, is a more formal variation of 捕まる. It just incidentally catches the meaning

that the speaker was arrested for theft. All the listener would know is that the speaker could have surrendered himself/herself at the police station.

20. 飲酒運転いんしゅうんでんで捕つかまると、罰金ばっきんはいくらですか。  
When you're arrested/caught for drunk-driving, how much is the fine?

## 負ける vs 負かされる

The intransitive verb 負ける when meaning "to lose (to)" is similar in meaning to 負かされる, meaning "to be beaten (by)." Although 負ける is naturally more objective and 負かされる is more subjective, over all, 負ける is far more common. This is because 負ける can be used in very emotional situations, and so the heightened emotion that 負かされる would provide is usually unnecessary.

21. (弁護士べんごしの) 原田はらださんは、口論こうろんになると、いつも奥おくさんに負まけてしまうらしいです。  
(The lawyer by the name of) Mr. Harada seems to lose every time he gets into an argument with his wife.

22. (弁護士べんごしの) 原田はらださんは、皮肉ひにくにも、口論こうろんになると、いつも奥おくさんに負まかされてしまうらしいです。  
Ironically, (the lawyer by the name of) Mr. Harada seems to always get defeated by his wife when they get into an argument.

23. あんなにきれいさっぱり負まかされるのが我慢がまんでできなかったんです。  
I just couldn't stand being completely defeated like that.

24. 棋士きしがコンピュータに {負まかされる・負まける} 日ひが来くるなど、とても考かんがえられなかった。  
It was totally unthinkable that the day would come a shogi/go player would [be defeated by/lose to] a computer.

25. 癌がんを負まけない！  
I will not lose to cancer!

26. 交渉こうしょうは、相手あいてを負まかすことではありません。  
Negotiating is not defeating one's opponent.

27. 女おんなの子こに負まかされた屈辱感くつじょくかんが増ましていった。  
The sense of humiliation from having been defeated by a girl grew.

28. 怒いかりに {負まけない・負まかされない} ようにしましょう。  
Let's try not to [lose/be defeated by] anger.

29. 初心者しょしんしゃに {負まけて・負まかされて} もめげない。  
Even if I [lose to/am defeated by] a beginner, I won't be discouraged.

30. 彼かれは無名むめいの新人しんじんに {負まけた・負まかされた}。  
He [lost to/was defeated by] an anonymous newcomer.

## 敗れる vs 破られる

The verb やぶれる and やぶる create an intransitive-transitive verb pair, but their meanings are not quite the same. Additionally, how they're spelled is also different.

- 破れる: To get torn; to rip; to break down; to be broken off.
- 敗れる: To be defeated; to lose.
- 破る: To tear/destroy; to break through; to defeat; to shatter/disturb; to break (a record).

At first glance, it appears that 敗れる is interchangeable with 負ける. Although this is true for the most part, 敗れる is slightly more literary. Furthermore, 敗れる, being that it is the same verb as the other 破れる, gives a nuance that the loss at hand was due to one's group falling apart. 破れる・敗れる and 負ける will also differ in set phrases.

Because set phrases are set, you can't just switch out a key component and be fine. Therefore, 負けるが勝ち (he that fights and runs away may live to fight another day) and 恋に破れる (to be disappointed in love) won't ever be seen with the two verbs flipped with each other.

Although 破る may be used to mean "defeat," in which case it is interchangeable with the more common 打ち負かす (to defeat), it is not used in the passive. However, 破られる is used as the passive form for all the other usages.

31. 結局けっきょくは試合しあいに敗やぶれてしまった。  
In the end, I was defeated in the match.

32. 彼氏かれしに約束やくそくを破やぶられたら別わかれませんか。  
Do you break up if your boyfriend breaks a promise on you?

33. 旅館りょかんやホテルの障子しょうじを破やぶってしまった時とき、料金りょうきんはどうなりますか。  
When you accidentally tear a paper sliding door at a ryokan or hotel, what happens to the fare?

34. 静寂せいじゃくが破やぶられた。  
The silence was broken.

35. 錦織圭にしきおりけいは、準々決勝じゅんじゅんけっしょうで敗やぶれた。  
Kei Nishikori was defeated in the quarterfinal.

## 知れる vs 知られる

The intransitive form of 知る is 知れる. 知れる means "to come to light/to be known." Aside from these two basic meanings, it also means "to obviously not amount to much" in the set phrase 高が知れている. It also appears in the infamous phrase かも知れない (might/maybe).

Clearly, because it is used in かも知れない, 知れる is a very common verb. However, its use outside set phrases is rather limited. When the sense of “to come to light” extends to “to be found out,” 知られる is far more frequent. Also, the more serious and/or complex the situation being found out is, the more likely 知られる is used over 知れる.

The reason for this is simple. In the positive sense of something being known to other people, 知れる is contained to set phrases. For instance, 名の知れた (well-known) is one example. Usually, the sense of “to be well-known” is taken over by the compound verb 知れ渡る.

Usually, 知れる is rather negative to the point of contempt. When used to indicate that something is obviously known it's not worth saying or that something doesn't amount to much, it clearly isn't being used nicely. This is likely why 知られる is almost always used in general situations to show that something was found out by others.

36. お里さとが知しれてしまう時ときってどんな時ときですか。  
What sort of moments does your upbringing get found out?

**Sentence Note:** Ex. 36 refers to the location of one's upbringing being found out by one's dialect. Even if a person learns how to speak in a standardized manner, slip-ups always occur. When directed at other people, お里が知れる is not a nice phrase.

37. 自衛隊じえいたいに応募おうぼしましたが、親おやに知しれて、阻止そしされてしまった過去かこがあります。

There was a moment in the past where I enlisted into the Self-Defense-Force but my parents found out and I was prevented from joining.

38. 彼かれはゲーム業界ぎょうかいでは名なの知しれた人物じんぶつだ。  
He is a well-known figure in the game industry.

39. 一人ひとりでできることはたかが知しれている。  
What one can do by oneself doesn't amount to much.

40. マイナンバーで生活保護受給せいかつほごじゅきゅうは会社かいしゃに知しられるのでしょうか。

Will being a welfare recipient be found out by my company through My Number?

41. クレジットカードは番号ばんごうを知しられるだけで危険きけんです。  
A credit card is dangerous just by having the number found out.

42. クレジットカードの暗証番号あんしょうばんごうを他人たにんに知しられてしまった。

The PIN to my credit card was found out by another person.

43. 転職てんしょくの際さい、年金ねんきん（の）手続てつづきで離婚歴りこんれきが知しられてしまうのでしょうか。

When switching jobs, would one's divorce history be found out via pension procedures?

44. 誰だれにも知しられないでしょう。  
It probably won't be found out by anyone.

45. 辞書じしょを引ひけば分かるのに、こんな質問しつもんを投稿とうこうする人ひとの気が知しれない。  
I can't for the life of me understand people who post these kinds of questions even though they could've figured them out by pulling out a dictionary.

**Grammar Note:** Ex. 45 is an example of 知れる being the potential form of 知る. As this example shows, when it's used this way, it's usually going to be in the negative form and the sentence overall will not be so kind.

46. 杳ようとして行方ゆくえ { (が) 不明ふめいだ・が分わからない・が知しれない }。  
(The person's) whereabouts are completely unknown.

47. それは言いわずと知しれたことだよ。  
That's needless to point out.

48. 君きみのことをどれほど心配しんぱいしたか知しれないよ。  
You have no idea how worried I was about you.

49. 欧米圏おうべいけんでは広ひろく知しれ渡わたっている。  
It's widely known in the West.

50. 健康保険けんこうほけんを使つかって病院びょういん { で・を? } 受診じゅしんしても会社かいしゃに知しられることはありません。  
Even if you get seen at a hospital with health insurance, (the visit) won't be found out by your company.

## 第228課: 自受動詞

In this lesson, we will discuss a handful of verbs that are called 自受動詞. These verbs are naturally passive-like intransitive verbs, and they incidentally share some level of interchangeability with their transitive verb pair passive forms. In this lesson, we will study the following verb forms:

- 見つかる vs 見つけられる
- 捕まる vs 捕まえられる
- 負ける vs 負かされる
- やぶれる vs やぶられる
- 知れる vs 知られる

A key requirement to be a 自受動詞 is that the number of required parts (arguments) in the sentence must be the same as when it's written in a transitive fashion.

- i. [I] lost [to John].
- ii. [I] was beaten [by John].



Just from looking at English, we can see that 負ける and 負かされる qualify as 自受動詞. Another requirement is that there be two arguments in the sentence for both means of phrasing. 負ける and 負かされる help make 負ける qualify to be a 自受動詞.

Before delving into examples, it is important to understand what defines the differences between the first and second options. When using a 自受動詞, you are inherently being more objective. Using the transitive passive forms requires that you be more specific about what is going on. This is because using these forms implies a far higher level of subjectivity. Grounding your statement with specifics is a natural means of providing legitimacy to what you're saying. This logic is what defines the naturalness and nuance splicing of deciding between a 自受動詞 and a transitive passive verb of the same thing.

## 見つかる vs 見つけれられる

The intransitive verb 見つかる creates an intransitive-transitive verb pair with 見つける. The verb 見つかる indicates the rather spontaneous finding of something. It lacks volition and, again, implies that the act of finding was incidental in nature. It is very objective as an effect. However, 見つける is the willful act of having found something. In other words, what the agent finds was actively sought out. As such, its passive form 見つけれられる has volition, an active agent, and a high level of subjectivity, all characteristics that 見つかる lacks.

1. きのう夕方ゆうがた、家出いえでした行方不明ゆくえふめいの学生がくせいが近所きんじょの人ひとに {見みつかりました・見みつけられました}。

Yesterday evening, the missing student who had run away was found by someone in the neighborhood.

**Sentence Note:** When 見つかる is used, the discovery sounds incidental. When 見つけれられる is used, the person found was actively sought out. The question “who found the person” also becomes more likely to be raised. If it's just 見つかる, then the listener is more likely to react, “oh, the person was found.” If it's 見つけれられる, then the listener is more likely to react, “Huh, I wonder who found the person, probably the police looking for him.”

2. 未成年みせいねんにタバコを販売はんばいしたのが警察けいさつに {見みつかりました・見みつけられました}。

I was caught by the police selling tobacco to a minor.

**Spelling Note:** タバコ can also be spelled as たばこ or 煙草.

**Sentence Note:** When 見つかる is used, it sounds as if the police incidentally found out about the speaker selling the tobacco to a minor. The sentence simply states the situation of the police finding out. Not much more can be gleamed from the statement, but not much more is necessarily going to be asked of by a listener. When 見つけれられる is used, it sounds like the police actively tried snatching the establishment when the worker made the mistake of selling the tobacco to the minor.

3. 信号無視しんごうむしをしていたら、警察けいさつに見みつかりました。  
Just as I was ignoring the traffic signal, I was caught by the police.

**Sentence Note:** In this sentence, the speaker was caught ignoring a traffic signal meant for a pedestrian. A policeman was incidentally there to notice the speaker flagrantly ignoring it and promptly snatched him/her.

4. 失踪者しっそうしゃが、成人せいじんの場合ばあいは、警察けいさつに見みつかったとしても、本人ほんにんの意思いしが尊重そんちょうされます。  
Even if a missing person is found by the police, in the even that the individual is an adult, the person's intention are respected.

5. 膵臓癌すいぞうがんを早はやいうちに見みつけられた。  
The pancreatic cancer was caught early.

**Sentence Note:** The use of 見つけられる implies an active role of the patient and physician(s) to find the cancer in its early stage.

6. すでに閉店へいてんしている店舗紹介てんぽしょうかいページを見みつけられた場合ばあいは、お問とい合あわせフォームよりご連絡ください。  
If you find an introductory page to a store that has already closed, please contact us from our inquiry form.

**Sentence Note:** The 見つけられる in this sentence is simply the light honorific form of 見つける. Of course, this has the same origin as the passive form, which also demonstrates how this usage of ～（ら）れる is only possible with the transitive verb forms here.

**Spelling Note:** すでに may also be spelled as 既に.

7. 住宅じゅうたくが全焼ぜんしょうし、1ひとりの遺体いたいが見みつかりました。  
The home completely burned up, and one body was found.

8. この女性じょせいは男性だんせいの部屋へやで胸むねに包丁ほうちょうが刺ささった状態じょうたいで見みつかりました。  
The woman was discovered stabbed in the chest with a kitchen knife in the man's room.

9. 自分じぶんに似合にあう色いろってなかなか見みつけられません。  
I can't seem to find a color that suits me.

**Sentence Note:** This 見つけられる utilizes the potential meaning of ～られる.

10a. どうしても仕事しごとが見みつからない。  
I simply can't find a job.

10b. どうしても仕事しごとが見みつけられない。  
I simply can't find a job.

**Sentence Note:** In 10a, the speaker is making a simple fact-of-the-matter statement that jobs aren't to be found whereas 10b implies an incapability of finding a job.

## 捕まる vs 捕まえられる

The verb 捕まる creates an intransitive-transitive verb pair with 捕まえる for “to be caught” and “to catch” respectively. When 捕まる is used, the objective act of being captured/arrested is what is being described. When 捕まえられる is used, the sentence becomes very subjective. Although it is not always necessary to include by whom the action was done in the sentence, but not including this information will have the listener wondering about more details.

**Orthography Note:** The characters 掴・掴 can be used instead if the person is being forcibly held down.

11a. 繁華街はんかがいの防犯ぼうはんカメラに映うつっていた容疑者ようぎしゃがきょう、県警けんけいに捕つかまった。

Today, the suspect, who had been captured by downtown security cameras, was caught by prefectural police.

11b. 繁華街はんかがいの防犯ぼうはんカメラに映うつっていた容疑者ようぎしゃがきょう、県警けんけいに捕つかまえられた。

Today, the suspect, who had been captured by downtown security cameras, was caught by prefectural police.

11c. 県警けんけいがきょう、繁華街はんかがいの防犯ぼうはんカメラに映うつっていた容疑者ようぎしゃを捕つかまえた。

Today, the prefectural police caught the suspect, who had been captured by downtown security cameras.

12. 世よの中なかには、まだ捕つかまっていない殺人犯さつじんはんが相当そうとういる。

There is a considerable number of criminals in the world who have yet to be caught.

13. ピカチュウを捕つかまえた！

I caught a Pikachu!

14. あいつは万引まんびきで捕つかまえられた。

The guy was caught shoplifting.

15. 犯人はんになは、大通おおどおりを横切よこぎった瞬間しゅんかんに警察けいさつに捕つかまえられた。

The criminal was caught by police the instant he/she tried crossing the boulevard.

16. 未いまだメタモンを捕つかまえられていない人ひとが結構けっこういるようです。

It appears that there are quite a lot of people who haven't been able to catch Ditto yet.

**Sentence Note:** Ex. 16 demonstrates how 捕まえられる, unlike 捕まる, can be used to indicate the potential. It's even possible for it to be used as the light honorific form of 捕まえる. Noticing that particle usage is different for the ‘passive’ interpretation than it is for the potential and the light honorific interpretations is very important in preventing confusion.

17. 先日せんじつ、友達ともだちが交通違反こうつういはんで捕つかまってしまった。  
The other day, my friend got caught for a traffic violation.

18. ついに宇宙人が捕まえられた！  
The alien has at last been caught!  
I've at last been able to capture the alien!

19. 私わたしは窃盗せつとうで警察けいさつに {逮捕たいほされました・捕つかまえられました}。  
I was arrested by police for theft.

**Sentence Note:** When 捕まえられる is used, Ex. 19 sounds like the speaker had been actively sought and then arrested. Perhaps the speaker had been caught close to the scene after a short chase. 逮捕される, on the other hand, is a more formal variation of 捕まる. It just incidentally catches the meaning that the speaker was arrested for theft. All the listener would know is that the speaker could have surrendered himself/herself at the police station.

20. 飲酒運転いんしゅうんてんで捕つかまると、罰金ばっきんはいくらですか。  
When you're arrested/caught for drunk-driving, how much is the fine?

## 負ける vs 負かされる

The intransitive verb 負ける when meaning “to lose (to)” is similar in meaning to 負かされる, meaning “to be beaten (by).” Although 負ける is naturally more objective and 負かされる is more subjective, over all, 負ける is far more common. This is because 負ける can be used in very emotional situations, and so the heightened emotion that 負かされる would provide is usually unnecessary.

21. (弁護士べんごしの) 原田はらださんは、口論こうろんになると、いつも奥おくさんに負まけてしまうらしいです。  
(The lawyer by the name of) Mr. Harada seems to lose every time he gets into an argument with his wife.

22. (弁護士べんごしの) 原田はらださんは、皮肉ひにくにも、口論こうろんになると、いつも奥おくさんに負まかされてしまうらしいです。  
Ironically, (the lawyer by the name of) Mr. Harada seems to always get defeated by his wife when they get into an argument.

23. あんなにきれいさっぱり負まかされるのが我慢がまんできなかったんです。  
I just couldn't stand being completely defeated like that.

24. 棋士きしがコンピュータに {負まかされる・負まける} 日ひが来くるなど、とても考かんがえられなかった。  
It was totally unthinkable that the day would come a shogi/go player would [be defeated by/lose to] a computer.

25. 癌がんを負まけない！  
I will not lose to cancer!

26. 交渉こうしょうは、相手あいてを負まかすことではありません。  
Negotiating is not defeating one's opponent.

27. 女おんなの子こに負まかされた屈辱感くつじょくかんが増ましていった。  
The sense of humiliation from having been defeated by a girl grew.

28. 怒いかりに {負まけない・負まかされない} ようにしましょう。  
Let's try not to [lose/be defeated by] anger.

29. 初心者しょしんしゃに {負まけて・負まかされて} もめげない。  
Even if I [lose to/am defeated by] a beginner, I won't be discouraged.

30. 彼かれは無名むめいの新人しんじんに {負まけた・負まかされた} 。  
He [lost to/was defeated by] an anonymous newcomer.

## 敗れる vs 破られる

The verb やぶれる and やぶる create an intransitive-transitive verb pair, but their meanings are not quite the same. Additionally, how they're spelled is also different.

- 破れる: To get torn; to rip; to break down; to be broken off.
- 敗れる: To be defeated; to lose.
- 破る: To tear/destroy; to break through; to defeat; to shatter/disturb; to break (a record).

At first glance, it appears that 敗れる is interchangeable with 負ける. Although this is true for the most part, 敗れる is slightly more literary. Furthermore, 敗れる, being that it is the same verb as the other 破れる, gives a nuance that the loss at hand was due to one's group falling apart. 破れる・敗れる and 負ける will also differ in set phrases.

Because set phrases are set, you can't just switch out a key component and be fine. Therefore, 負けるが勝ち (he that fights and runs away may live to fight another day) and 恋に破れる (to be disappointed in love) won't ever be seen with the two verbs flipped with each other.

Although 破る may be used to mean "defeat," in which case it is interchangeable with the more common 打ち負かす (to defeat), it is not used in the passive. However, 破られる is used as the passive form for all the other usages.

31. 結局けっきょくは試合しあいには敗やぶれてしまった。  
In the end, I was defeated in the match.

32. 彼氏かれしに約束やくそくを破やぶられたら別わかれませんか。  
Do you break up if your boyfriend breaks a promise on you?

33. 旅館りょかんやホテルの障子しょうじを破やぶってしまった時とき、料金りょうきんはどうなりますか。

When you accidentally tear a paper sliding door at a ryokan or hotel, what happens to the fare?

34. 静寂せいじゃくが破やぶられた。  
The silence was broken.

35. 錦織圭にしきおりけいは、準々決勝じゅんじゅんけっしょうで敗やぶれた。  
Kei Nishikori was defeated in the quarterfinal.

## 知れる vs 知られる

The intransitive form of 知る is 知れる. 知れる means “to come to light/to be known.” Aside from these two basic meanings, it also means “to obviously not amount to much” in the set phrase 高が知れている. It also appears in the infamous phrase かも知れない (might/maybe).

Clearly, because it is used in かも知れない, 知れる is a very common verb. However, its use outside set phrases is rather limited. When the sense of “to come to light” extends to “to be found out,” 知られる is far more frequent. Also, the more serious and/or complex the situation being found out is, the more likely 知られる is used over 知れる.

The reason for this is simple. In the positive sense of something being known to other people, 知れる is contained to set phrases. For instance, 名の知れた (well-known) is one example. Usually, the sense of “to be well-known” is taken over by the compound verb 知れ渡る.

Usually, 知れる is rather negative to the point of contempt. When used to indicate that something is obviously known it's not worth saying or that something doesn't amount to much, it clearly isn't being used nicely. This is likely why 知られる is almost always used in general situations to show that something was found out by others.

36. お里さとが知しれてしまう時ときってどんな時ときですか。  
What sort of moments does your upbringing get found out?

**Sentence Note:** Ex. 36 refers to the location of one's upbringing being found out by one's dialect. Even if a person learns how to speak in a standardized manner, slip-ups always occur. When directed at other people, お里が知れる is not a nice phrase.

37. 自衛隊じえいたいに応募おうぼしましたが、親おやに知しれて、阻止そしされてしまった過去かこがあります。  
There was a moment in the past where I enlisted into the Self-Defense-Force but my parents found out and I was prevented from joining.

38. 彼かれはゲーム業界ぎょうかいでは名なの知しれた人物じんぶつだ。  
He is a well-known figure in the game industry.

39. 一人ひとりでできることはたかが知しれている。  
What one can do by oneself doesn't amount to much.

40. マイナンバーで生活保護受給せいかつほごじゅきゅうは会社かいしゃに知しられるのでしょうか。

Will being a welfare recipient be found out by my company through My Number?

41. クレジットカードは番号ばんごうを知しられるだけで危険きけんです。

A credit card is dangerous just by having the number found out.

42. クレジットカードの暗証番号あんしょうばんごうを他人たにんに知しられてしまった。

The PIN to my credit card was found out by another person.

43. 転職てんしょくの際さい、年金ねんきん（の）手続てつづきで離婚歴りこんれきが知しられてしまうのでしょうか。

When switching jobs, would one's divorce history be found out via pension procedures?

44. 誰だれにも知しられないでしょう。

It probably won't be found out by anyone.

45. 辞書じしょを引ひけば分かるのに、こんな質問しつもんを投稿とうこうする人ひとの気きが知しれない。

I can't for the life of me understand people who post these kinds of questions even though they could've figured them out by pulling out a dictionary.

**Grammar Note:** Ex. 45 is an example of 知れる being the potential form of 知る. As this example shows, when it's used this way, it's usually going to be in the negative form and the sentence overall will not be so kind.

46. 杳ようとして行方ゆくえ {（が）不明ふめいだ・が分わからない・が知しれない}。

(The person's) whereabouts are completely unknown.

47. それは言いわずと知しれたことだよ。

That's needless to point out.

48. 君きみのことをどれほど心配しんぱいしたか知しれないよ。

You have no idea how worried I was about you.

49. 欧米圏おうべいけんでは広ひろく知しれ渡わたっている。

It's widely known in the West.

50. 健康保険けんこうほけんを使つかって病院びょういん {で・を?} 受診じゅしんしても会社かいしゃに知しられることはありません。

Even if you get seen at a hospital with health insurance, (the visit) won't be found out by your company.

## 第230課: The Particles さえ, すら, & だに

The particles さえ, すら, and だに are often interchangeable, but pay close attention to detail. There is some history involved, so try not to use these

words anachronistically. Although they're interchangeable with each other, there are subtle differences.

## The Adverbial Particle すら

すら is the original particle for minimal example--"even...not to mention..". Now it has evolved to show minimal expectation, which is showing an extreme (usually negative) example. So, it is equal to "(not) even". It can be seen as ですら. すらは faded into literature and somehow survived to the present. Now, だに is ironically rarer than すら.

Using this with other particles is very tricky as there is historical and personal variation. For instance, using it with を isn't wrong. However, many people just use すら. For when you do want to use it with を, をすら and すらを are both possible, but the latter is extremely old-fashioned. Even so, it still pops up.

1. なにしろ、警視庁みずから一般人の犯歴データを流していたことが問題になったばかりなのに、公の裁判所の正式決定すらをはねつけたんですからね。  
Anyhow, although the Metropolitan Police themselves having been leaking out general people's criminal record data has just become a problem, it's because they even rejected a public court's official decision.  
From 明日はどっちだ! by 岡留安則.

## The Adverbial Particle さえ

さえ comes from the verb 添ふ (to add), which has become 添える in Modern Japanese. So, the original meaning of this particle was "in addition to". Eventually, さえ began to be used to show minimal example. Both usages survive today, but the latter can be alternatively expressed with でさえ, as is demonstrated in the example below. It is to note that both ですら and でさえ are only used after nouns! This is because the case particle で is in these expressions.

2. 今どき、男の子だったら、小学生でさえ知ってるよ。  
These days even boys in elementary school know.

The meaning of X(で)さえY is this. Some X matter and some Y action/happening/condition are usually not connected in any one, yet when you bind them together, you emphasize a situation that is not the norm by any means. This is what minimal example means.

3. 虎でさえ彼を傷つけることはできない。  
Not even a tiger can hurt him.
4. 彼は食費 {さえ・すら} 惜しんだ。  
He even begrudged taking the money for food.

It's sometimes hard to tell which meaning is meant. Minimal example is often used in negative expressions, but when this is not the case, consider the context. "Even a kid can understand it" is minimum example. "In



addition to us, even the dogs understand" shows addition. It doesn't help that both English and Japanese are vague on this.

5. 雪どころか雨さえ降らなかった。  
Not even rain fell, let alone snow.

6 初心者にはさえできることだ。  
It's something even a beginner can do.

7a. 子供 { (で) {さえ・すら} ・でも} (そのこと) 知ってる (ことだ) よ。○  
7b. 子供もさえそんなこと知ってるよ。X  
Even kids know that.

8. ただでさえ電車が遅れているのに、寄り道をしようだなんて。  
Even under normal circumstances, hanging out along the way even when the train is late is just...

9a. ぼくは独りだから、君さえぼくの心の頼りだよ。X  
9b. ぼくは独りだから、君だけがぼくの心の頼りだよ。○  
Because I'm all alone, you're the only thing my heart relies on.

### **Particle Note:**

1. さえ can be after other particles like に. をさえ is also possible, but を is usually dropped. In literature, however, をさえ is more common.

10. 秘密にしていたのに、三歳の子供にさえ気づかれてしまった。  
Even though I was keeping it a secret, it was even found out by a three year old.

11. 自分はまだ生きているのだという実感をさえ持つことができたのだった。  
I was able to have the realization that I myself was still alive.  
From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

2. There is also さえも and さえもが. Both are more emphatic than さえ and show minimal example, but が implies new information and or surprise. If you understand も and が well enough, this shouldn't be hard to visualize.

12. 死さえもが玉井にとっては安楽なのだ。  
Even death was something which would be bring ease to Tamai.  
From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

13. 子どもばかりじゃなく、大人さえも悲鳴をあげたよ。  
The children and even the adults screamed.

---

### **Important Patterns**

Both さえ and すら can be after the 連用形 of verbs similar to は, や. etc. You can also use them after て. This creates a phrase that puts emphasis on the action rather than the noun. すら, again, is increasingly becoming rarer, so

you will probably only see it with nouns. Here is a chart using the pattern さえ…ば (if only you~) to illustrate this grammar.

Noun + さえ + Verb + ば	薬さえ飲めば	If you only drank this medicine (and no other)
Verb (連用形) + さえ + すれば	薬を飲みさえ すれば	If you only drink this medicine (and do nothing else)
Verb + て + さえ + いれば	薬を飲んでさ えいれば	If you are drinking this medicine (and doing nothing else)

**Grammar Note:** Verb+ている+さえすれば → Verb+ていさえすれば. In this case, it doesn't matter that 連用形 of いる is left like that. Remember, this is not like ~ており、・・・.

14. 食べ（（すぎ）さえし）なければ、もっとやせ（られる・るようになるよ）。  
If you would only not eat, you would be able to lose more weight.
15. 幸せでありさえすればかまわないんだ。  
I don't care so long as you are happy.
16. 知ってさえいればな～。(Colloquial Spelling)  
If only I had known!
17. 時間さえあれば、手伝うんだが。  
If only I had time, I'd help.
18. 生きていさえすれば、何も要らない。  
If you just live on, you won't need anything.
19. 勉強さえすれば、試験はできるでしょう。  
If you just study, you should be able to do the exam.
20. 一生懸命頑張りさえすれば、何でも好きなことができる。  
If you just try with all your hardest, you should be able to do anything you like.
21. 分からない漢字は、調べさえすれば分かりますよ。  
If you simply look up Kanji you don't understand, you'll understand them.
22. 日本語は、日本人と毎日話そうとしてさえいれば話せるようになります。  
If you just try talking to Japanese people everyday, you'll become able to speak in Japanese.
23. 病気は、この漢方薬さえ飲めば、よくなります。  
If you drink just this herbal medicine, your sickness should become better.
24. 和書さえ読めれば、幸せです。  
If I read just Japanese books, I'm happy.

25. これさえあれば、後は何も要らない。

If we only had this, we'd need nothing later.

**Nuance Note:** Again, these particles emphasize what they directly follow, so although there is some levity on where to place さえ in a sentence, be aware of this.

**Speech Style Note:** Though さえ may be used in the spoken language, it is more common in the written language.

26. しかしこの進学については、思い出すさえ忌々しい事情がある。

But, remembering about going onto university brought on annoying circumstances by just remembering.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

**Grammar Note:** さえ also rarely follows the 連体形 of verbs. This is essentially old-fashioned.

## The Adverbial Particle だに

だに, not to be confused with the noun ダニ (tick), is used in both negative and positive sentences. It raises the most probable thing and negates it and anything aside from it. Originally, it showed minimal desire or want. In this sense it means "at the least". This led to it being used to show minimal example just like さえ andすら. This is equivalent to だけで. It is the rarest of the three.

27a. 夢にだに思ったことはない。(かなり古風)

27b. 夢でさえ思ったこともない。(もっと一般的)

I have not thought of something in just a dream.

28. ネオンは錯綜し、呑み屋の大きな赤い提灯は微動だもしなかった。

The neon lights complicated things, and the bar's big, red lantern didn't even sway a bit.

From スタア by 三島由紀夫.

**Grammar Note:** だも is a contraction of だにも.

## 第231課: 〜において・における

In this lesson we'll learn about the compound particle 〜において and its attribute form 〜における.

### 〜において・における

〜において・における can be used to mark the place of an event or field of activity. As you could imagine, 〜における is the attribute form.

1. 国会における発言

The remark in the Diet

2. 大会は上海において1週間にわたって開かれます。  
The convention will be open in Shanghai over a week's time.

3. 来年の総会はベルリンにおいて行われます。  
Next year's general meeting will be held in Berlin.

4. 会議は第一会議室において行われました。  
The meeting was held in the first conference room.

Unlike で, however, it can be used to specify a non-physical location. It could still be paraphrased out, but lack of emphasis and this connection are as consequence. The examples below, though, aren't truly quite like existential statements. Rather, they force emphasis on the setting in which the attributed item is in.

5. 人生におけるいくつかの過ちと選択  
The several mistakes and choices in human life  
From the title of a book by ウォーリー・ラム.

6. それは私の人生における最良の日であった。  
That was the best day in my life.

7. 恋と戦争においては全てが正当であるというのは本当かな。  
I wonder if all is truly fair in love and war.

When it is used to show the time of something, it is interchangeable with the particle に. Unlike に, though it does not indicate a specific time. 〜における, as one would imagine, is interchangeable with の. This only means that whenever you can use 〜における, you could use の instead, not the other way around.

**Speech Style Note:** It's very formal and usually replaced by other things in 話し言葉. As such, it is rarely ever used in reference to personal activity.

8. 私は毎日友達の家において勉強します。X

**Orthography Note:** It can be written in 漢字 as に[於いて・於ける]. You may often see "at" written as 於 on info cards.

9. 過去における出来事  
Happenings in the past

10. 地震などの災害時においては、特に正確な情報が必要である。  
In times of natural disaster such as earthquakes, it's important to especially have accurate information.

11a. 2014年のG8のサミットはブラジルにおいて行われます。(More formal)

11b. 2014年のG8のサミットはブラジルで行われます。  
The 2014 G8 summit will be held in Brazil.

12. 彼は経済学において {優れて・秀でて} います。  
He is outstanding in the field of economics.

13. 人生に於ける使命感のある人。

A person who has a sense of mission in life.

14. 畦あぜは、稲作農業いなさくのうぎょうにおいて、水田と水田の境に泥土でいどを盛り上げて、水が外に漏れないようにしたものである。

Causeways in rice farming are things made for water to not leak out from piling up mud on the boarders of rice patty fields.

From ウィキペディア.

15. 絵画においても、音楽においても、彼女より才能に恵まれた人はあまりいない。

In both art and music, there aren't many more gifted than her.

Adapted from *A Dictionary of Japanese Particles* by Sue A. Kawashima.

16. 家族や友だち等と一緒にの食卓においては、子どもの心身の成長・発達の変化を日々観察することが可能である。

It is possible to observe the development changes and mind and soul growth of children daily at the dinner table together with family and friends.

From 保育所における食事の提供ガイドライン

It may also be used in the sense of “regards to” and translated as such to be “at/in”.

17. 技術において他国に優る。

To be superior to other countries in technology.

18. 個人の名において

As to individual names

19. 統計の分析の能力において彰子は非常に優れている。

In regards to statistic analysis, Shoko is extremely excellent.

20. この点において私と彼女とは意見が食い違っています。

As for this point, my opinion differs with hers.

21. 自分の責任において

At one's risk

**Etymology Note:** 於ける comes from the verb おく's 命令形 + へり in its 連体形. へり is an archaic auxiliary that shows completion.

**第232課： More Negative Patterns:** へないことには, へなし・なき, へなしで (は), へなしに (は), へなくして (は), へことなく, & 甲斐もなく

This lesson will introduce you to more patterns that utilize へない or derivations of it.

## ～ないことには(～ない)

AないことにはB means "if...don't/in not...; unless". So, if you don't do A, you get stuck with B. B could be positive or negative depending on the outcome that you wish to express. It can be used with verbs, adjectives, or the copula, but don't forget how to properly use ない! This pattern must be only used in declarative sentences.

品詞	接続	例
名詞	N+でないことには	人でないことには
形容詞	Adj → く-連用形 + ないことには	高くないことには
形容動詞	Adj + でないことには	精密でないことには
動詞	Adj → 未然形 + ないことには	しないことには

- 泳がないことには、海岸に行けなくなった。  
In not swimming, I became unable to go to the beach.
- 急がないことには、間に合わなくなる。  
In not hurrying, you won't make it in time.
- 勝たないことには、試合しあいに負ける。  
If you don't win, you lose in the tournament.
- がんばらないことには、今度の韓国語の試験に合格できないよ。  
Unless you try hard, you won't pass this next Korean exam.

**Grammar Note:** Do not confuse this with ...ないことには where は is simply emphatic. The phrase discussed in this section is conjunctive in nature whereas this isn't.

- 自分に関わりのないことには口を出すなよ。  
Don't interfere in things that don't concern you!

## ～なし

無なし means "without" and is after nominal phrases. If なし for some reason is placed before a noun, it becomes 無き. There is more behind this form of ない. The problem lies with how to use ～なしに (は) , ～なしで (は) , and ～なくして (は) . These phrases show that if something were not to happen, a certain event won't be. These phrases show necessity, and there is a negative phrase in the next clause.

- コーヒーなしに過ごせない。  
I can't go on without coffee.
- 涙なしに語ることができない。(書き言葉的)  
I can't tell it without tears coming.

8. 国民の理解と協力なしには実行できない。(書き言葉)

We can't act forth without the understanding and cooperation of the citizens.

9. 政府開発援助なしではこの革新的な医学研究は続けることができない。

Without government development aid, this groundbreaking medical research can't continue.

10. しっかりと準備することなくしては成功できぬ。(硬い書き言葉)

Without properly preparing, you can't succeed.

11. 先生方のご指導なくして私の大学合格は有り得ませんでした。(とても丁寧; Useful expression)

Without the guidance of my teachers, my college success wouldn't have been possible.

12. 政治家せいじかはテレプロンプター(原稿)なしで話せない。

Politicians can't talk without a teleprompter.

13. 百害ひゃくがいあって一利いちりなし。(Set phrase/proverb)

To do no good but a lot of harm.

14. 「憲法を改正することなくして、軍事大国になれない」と考える人が増えているそうだ。

It sounds that the number of people who think that without revising the constitution, [Japan] won't be able to become a military power is growing.

**Grammar Note:** Also seen as ～ずして(は), ～なくして(は) is a more old-fashioned/archaic equivalent of ～なしに(は), but it can be used in plus and or negative situations.

---

### ～なしで(は) VS ～なしに(は)

Although both present a premise X, which makes Y possible, they are slightly different.

1. ～なしで(は) is used with a noun that shows a general condition, and the listener is told that there must be X. Thus, the speaker can use this when pointing out a ban or the need for evasion.

2. ～なしに(は) can't be used directly towards the listener to get that person working. When these expressions are interchangeable, the former shows an individual cause whereas the latter shows a more obvious situation that is deemed to be evident and necessary. Thus, it is more suited for the written language.

15. スペイン語? 無理いうなや。辞書なし {で・に} は、分かんわ。(ちょっと関西弁っぽい)

Spanish? Don't be unreasonable. I can't understand it without a dictionary.

16. 客商売だから、ネクタイなし {○で・Xに} は、困るんだけども。(話し言葉)  
Since it's business (client-oriented), it'd be troubling without a tie.

17. 届け出なし {○に・△で} 外泊するのは、キャンプの規則に違反することになります。  
Sleeping outdoors is now a violation of camp rules without notification.

18. ノックなしに (は)、ドアを開けないでください。  
Don't open the door without knocking.

**Grammar Note:** は in the last situation would make it fit well, but the message was probably written on the door rather than spoken. Had the sentence been spoken, with ノックしないで being more common, ~なしに would exemplarily demonstrate consideration to the listener.

---

### ～ないことには～ない VS ～ことなしに (は) ～ない VS ～ことなく

XないことにはYない shows that for the realization of Y, X is necessary. X can be a positive or negative situation. However, ~ことなしに (は) ~ない and ~ことなく can only be used with verbs whereas the former pattern is also seen with nouns and adjectives. Furthermore, these latter expressions show that "for Y to realize, X is unavoidable". So, it's not positive.

19a. 努力どりよく {することなしには・しないことには}、成功はできない。

19b. 成功するためには、努力を避けていることはできない。  
You cannot succeed unless you put in effort.

20. 「憲法を変え {・ることなしには・ないことには}、軍事大国になれないと考える人が増えている」といわれますが、本当かどうかよく分かりませんね。  
It's said that the number of people that think that without changing the constitution, [Japan] won't be able to come a military power is growing, but I don't really know if that's true.

21. 優しい人でないことには、お金があっても、結婚できませんよ。  
You can't get married even if you have money if you're not a nice person.

---

Other things to keep in mind is that both ~ことなしに (は) ~ない and ~ことなく are more 書き言葉的; however, the former is even more 硬かたい because it has the old なし in it. You do still see ~こと (も) なく in the spoken language, though, in which it has interchangeability with 連用形+もしないで.

22a. 多少のリスクを負わないことには、ビジネスなんかできないよ。とうてい避けられないもんだから。○

22b. 多少のリスクを負う {ことなく・ことなしに}、ビジネスなんかできないよ。とうてい避けられないもんだから。X

Without taking some risk, you can't do business. That's because you can't avoid it no matter what.



23. 石に躓つまづいて転ころんだ子供が {泣くこともなく・泣きもしないで}、笑顔えがおで立ち上がったなんてびっくりしたよ。

I was surprised that the kid who tripped and fell on the rocks got up with a smile without even crying.

24. しょうことなく、メザキさんと並んで、いくら行っても太くもならないし細くもならない道を、長く歩いた。

With it not being helped, I went along with Mr. Mezaki, and we walked a long ways down the road, which no matter how much you go neither widens nor thins.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

**Phrase Note:** しょうことなく = しょうことなしに = やむを得ず.

## 甲斐 (かい) もなく

甲斐かい means "avail" and 甲斐かいもなく, thus, means "to no avail/in vain". Just as in English, it is not really casual.

25. 私たちは練習れんしゅうした甲斐かいもなく負けてしまった。

We lost despite practicing.

26. わざわざフランスから出かけてきた甲斐がありました。

It was worth our while to have come all the way from France.

27. 勉強した甲斐もなく落ちてしまいました。

I ended up failing to no avail of studying.

28. 働はたらき甲斐がい

Just the value of working

29. 年甲斐としがいもなく

Unbecoming to one's age

## 第233課: Exception: ～をのぞいて, ～をおいて, & ～ならでは

These phrases limit things as exceptions in their own unique ways.

### ～のぞいて

After a noun phrase of some sort, ～除いて is used to mean "except..." and is often left in ひらがな. It is a general phrase and will differ with the emotive power of the following grammar point ～をおいて. The verb 除く can mean "to remove/exclude", and "exclude" can also be expressed with the verb 除外じょがいする, which is of the vein of "to set aside/rule out".

1. 一隻いっせきを除いて艦船かんせんは全部沈しずんだ。

Except for one vessel, all of the carriers sank.

2. きのう、暑かったことをのぞいて、僕は楽しいときを過ごした。  
Yesterday, except it being hot, we had a good time.
3. 私は除いてください。  
Please include me out.
4. 私は報道記者と政治家を除く全ての人々が平等であると信じている。  
I believe it in the equality of all people except reporters and politicians.
5. 北部をのぞいて、お天気はよかったですよ。  
The weather was good except in the north.
6. わたしを除いて全ての人々がそれを知っていたそ。  
Except me, it seems that everyone knew about it.
7. 女性は調査対象ちょうさいしょうから除外することになった。  
It was decided that women were to be taken out of the inquiry subjects.

**Variant Note:** In more formal literary fashion, this can also be seen as ～のぞき.

8. 政府の規制改革会議きせいかいかくかいぎが全面的ぜんめんてきな解禁かいきんを求めている、インターネットを使った市販薬しはんやくの販売について、菅官房長官かんかんぼうちょうかんや田村厚生労働大臣たむらこうせいろうどうだいじんら関係4閣僚かくりょうは、副作用ふくさようのリスクの評価が終わっていない、ごく一部の市販薬を除き、大半たいはんを解禁する方向で調整ちょうせいを進める見通しです。

In regards to the all-round band lift of the sale of over-the-counter drugs using the internet that a government regulation reform meeting is seeking, Chief Cabinet Secretary Kan, Prime Minister Tamura of the Ministry of Health, Labor and Welfare, and four other bureaucrats in connection are forecast to further the coordination in the direction of lifting the ban in large part with exception to a small amount of over-the-counter drugs of which the evaluation of side-effect risks is not over.  
From NHK on June 4, 2013.

**Warning Note:** Do not confuse this with the verb 覗く, which means to “to peep/take a look at” and has the same pronunciation.

---

### ～をのぞいて VS ～以外

This is very similar to ～以外. One thing to notice, though, is that ～以外 is a suffix, and as seen below, the phrase is more affirmative and somewhat more formal sounding.

9. 九州以外のどこも地震が発生した。  
With exception of Kyushu, earthquakes occurred everywhere.
10. これ以外に方法はありませんよ。  
There is no method other than this.

## ～をおいて

～をおいて means "apart from". This phrase is used to highly evaluate something or someone. So, it's a good thing. There is always something like ほかに... (い) ない after it. When you are generally saying "aside from", use ～を除いて. Like ～除いて, ～をおいて is used after noun phrases.

This phrase originally showed a meaning of "without emphasizing A as something important, one treats A as being useless and throws it out/ places it to the side/separates it apart/removes it. In this sense, Aをおいてほかに (い) ない becomes a double negative expression, which then makes it an extremely powerful affirmative statement of A being number one.

In Japanese it is usually the case that very powerful expressions are kept in the written language, and although this is the case for をおいて, in rather formal situations, it can be used to declare one's top recommendation. It doesn't necessarily have to be in formal situations; however, as the first example sentence demonstrates clearly.

---

### Examples

11. 君をおいて適任者てきにんしゃはいないぞ！  
Apart from you there's no responsible person!
12. 頼れるのは彼女をおいてほかにない。  
There is no one to rely apart from her.
13. これをおいてほかに方法はなかった。  
There was no way but this.
14. それはさておき・それはさておいて  
Aside from that
15. 九州と四国を除いてそこかしこで東日本大震災は多数の死者を出して大災害が発生する結果となりました。  
Apart from Kyushu and Shikoku, no matter where there are many deaths and major catastrophes have occurred in the Tohoku-Kanto Earthquake Catastrophe.

---

### ～別 VS ～をおいて

The following paraphrases with 別 is used rather than ～をおいて because the situation is not one of pointing out as the best but something that should be treated separately.

- 16a. 震度7 は別として、釜石市には津波が押し寄せました。
- 16b. 震度7度の地震とは別に、津波が釜石市を襲おそった。  
Apart from a 7 earthquake, Kamaishi City got flooded by a tsunami.

**Word Note:** The 震度 system is on a different scale than the Richter scale.

## ～ならでは

～ならでは is one of those instances where classical grammar holds on strong. The なら in this expression, like the particle なら comes from the 未然形 of the Classical Japanese copular verb なり. It is then followed by a classical usage of で, which is not related to the contraction of にて. In this case, it is the contraction of ～ずて, which is equivalent to ～なくて. は, here, is here for contrastive purposes. If the pattern were translated into something solely Modern Japanese, it would be equivalent to ～でなくては・～でなければ.

This pattern is used to express the brilliance/wonderfulness of something by claiming that only it is as such. In the unabbreviated state of a sentence with it, a complementing verbal/adjectival phrase follows, but this can be omitted out if that phrase is being used as an attribute by replacing it with の, giving ～ならではの, which is the more common form of the pattern.

The entire phrase, which is “AならではBない (C)” is, then, equivalent to expressions such as “AであってはじめてB” and “AだからこそB”. In the case that A is a commonplace noun, ～ならでは is of the sense of the former coming from the position of societal wisdom/common sense. However, when A is particular, it shows that only A can do C.

---

### Examples

17. 君ならではできないことだよ！  
Without you, this cannot be done!
18. それ、中国の方ならでは {できない・の} ものの考え方ですよ。  
That is only a matter of thought possibly by a person from China.
19. それって、大阪弁ならでは {ありえない・の} 人当たりのよさですね。  
That is charm only that of Osaka Dialect, isn't it?
20. 社長しゃちょうならではの発想はっそうですね。  
This can only be a conception of the company president, isn't it?
21. この教科書きょうかしょならではの特徴とくちょうです。  
This is a characteristic only in this textbook.
22. 50年続いた老舗ならでは出せないこの味の良さ！  
The goodness of this flavor that only an old shop for 50 years can offer!
23. この体験は沖縄ならではですよ。  
This experience can only be in Okinawa!

**Grammar Note:** As you can see, another exceptional thing about ～ならでは is that it can be followed by ～です with the rest of the pattern omitted.

24. さすが一流レストランのシェフならではの {出せない・の} 味ですね。

This is as expected flavor that can only be from a first rate restaurant chef.

**Phrase Note:** さすが, which is an adverb that shows something as something to be expected, is frequently used with ～ならではの.

## 第234課: Can't Help I: ～ないではいられない

Double negative expressions seem to cause confusion for Japanese learners. Especially if these learners come from language backgrounds that include languages where these kind of expressions still yield negative meaning, it's not surprising that phrases like ～ないではいられない would cause problems.

It's also not helpful that some textbooks call certain adverbs "negative" when it's just a matter of semantics. In this lesson, you will learn about ～ないではいられない by knowing not only what it means, but also what it is similar to and how it is different.

### ～ないではいられない

At a basic understanding, ～ないではいられない means "cannot help but...". This translation, however, makes it seem a whole lot like ～てしまう. It also looks vaguely similar to ～なければならぬ and happens to also mean something similar. Consider the following errors.

1a. 期末試験があるので、今晚勉強しないではいられない。X

1b. 期末試験があるので、今晚勉強しなければならぬ。○

Intended: Since I have a final exam, I have to study tonight.

2a. その赤ちゃんの笑顔を見ると、笑わないではいられなくなる。X

2b. その赤ちゃんの笑顔を見ると、自然と笑ってしまう。○

Intended: When(ever) I see that baby's smiling face, I cannot help but laugh.

If you couldn't figure out why the first wording was wrong, we'll reexamine them later as to why they're wrong after we go through some facts about ～ないではいられない.

---

## Conjugation and Variants

This pattern can also be seen as ～ずにはいられない, which is more literary. ～ず is an old negative ending. Like other negative endings, it attaches to the 未然形. As it is old, it attaches to the old 未然形 of する, せ-. Thus, you get せずにはいられない, and not しずにはいられない.

Class 例      ～ないではいられない      ～ずにはいられない (書き言葉的)

一段 感じる    感じないではいられない    感じずにはいられない  
感ぜずにはいられない (古風)

一段	食べる	食べないではいられない	食べずにはいられない
五段	泣く	泣かないではいられない	泣かずにはいられない
五段	思う	思わないではいられない	思わずにはいられない
カ変	来る	来ないではいられない	来ずにはいられない
サ変	する	しないではいられない	せずにはいられない

---

### Defining

Now, what does ～ずにはいられない really mean? Consider the following.

～ずにはいられない: This expression shows the speaker's feeling of ending up doing something without being able to restrain one's willpower. So, it cannot be used with things that are deemed to be spontaneous. The situation must be one where you should have willful control over, but you succumb to something. This, though, doesn't have to always be used in a negative fashion, because it's often the case that the situation is good.

3. 会社でいやなことがあって、飲ま {ないで・ずに} はいられなかったんだ。  
Bad things happened at the company, and so I couldn't help but drink.
  4. ダイエット中でも食べずにはいられない。  
I can't help but eat even during a diet.
  5. 僕の彼女に勧められれば、買わないではいられないよ。  
If I'm recommended to by my girlfriend, I can't help but buy it.
- 

### More Notes

This phrase, as the last example shows, is often used with conditionals. Remember that when talking about a third person, speech modals like ～だろう and ～ようだ become necessary. This pattern is also frequently used after clauses that establish a reason as for why "one cannot help but...". Although earlier it was noted that this does not necessarily have to be used in a negative light, it still can be.

6. その話を聞いたら、いくらやさしい彼女でも怒らずにはいられないだろう。  
Even such a nice person like her wouldn't probably be able to help but be angry if she heard that story.
7. そのニュースに対して疑問を抱かずにはいられませんでした。  
I couldn't help but hold doubts in regards to that news.

This expression is frequently used with verbs of action, emotion, and thought. As this pattern indicates a slipping of willful control to letting go in doing such action, it is frequently used with adverbs such as どうしても, なぜか, つい, etc.

8. 僕は黙ってたほうがええと思ったが、どうしても一言言わないではいられなかった。(Casual)

I thought that it would be best to just stay quiet, but I couldn't help but say something.

This pattern is similar to ～てしまう in that both show a sense of accidentally doing something, but if something is felt to spontaneously/physiologically occur, ～てしまう remains grammatical while ～ないではいられない does not.

9a. 嬉しくて買わないではいられなかった。X

9b. 嬉しくて買ってしまった。

I was happy and ended up/accidentally bought it.

Mixing this phrase up with ～なければならぬ is not acceptable. The literal translation of such a mistake doesn't even make much sense in English, that is unless you're purposely being humorous, which in that case humor often breaks grammatical rules regardless of language.

10. 笑わないではいられません。

I can't help but laugh.

11. おかしくて笑わないではいられない。

I couldn't help but laugh because it was funny.

**Sentence Note:** Although the first sentence in this lesson with 笑う was marked wrong, with context that implies the willful effort of trying to withhold laughter, this pattern can be used. Remember that with this pattern you can't restrain oneself from doing something, so there has to be some sense that you gave up trying.

---

### More Examples

12. 会わないではいられなかった。

I couldn't help but see her.

13. 泣かないではいられませんでした。

I couldn't help but cry.

14. お酒を飲まないではいられない。

I can't help but drink sake.

15. サービスが悪いと、一言文句を言わないではいられない。

When the service is bad, I can't help but complain a bit.

16. 単純な質問を見ると、答えずにはいられないよ。

When I see a simple question, I can't help but answer it.

17. 何かできることを手伝わないではいられなかった。

I couldn't help but do what I could.

18. この本を読み始めたら、終りまで読まないではいられませんでした。

When I started reading this book, I couldn't help but read it until the end.

19. 私は困っ {た・ている} 人を見ると、声をかけないではいられません。

When I see someone in distress, I can't help but call to them.

20. 私は困っ {た・ている} 人を見ると、助けないではいられません。

When I see someone in distress, I can't help but help them.

21. 当選とうせんしたからって喜よろこんではいられない。

I can't be so happy just because I got elected.

**Grammar Note:** When you do not make this phrase a double negative, you change the translation as seen in the example above to "can't be..".

**Curriculum Note:** We will return to similar expressions dealing with restraint of various sorts later in IMABI.

---

### ～ざるを得ない VS ～ないではいられない

～ざるを得ない is very similar, but the speaker has more control in the fact that they feel an obligation to do something, but obligation itself is not all there has to be for someone to actually do something. Thus, the speaker still has some control, howbeit very little.

22. 酔っ払いに注意しないではいられなかった。

I couldn't help but pay attention to the drunks.

23. 酔っ払いに注意せざるを得なかった。

I had no choice but to pay attention to the drunks.

## **第235課: Can't Help II: ～てならない, ～てやまない, ～てしかたがない, ～にたえない, & ～てたまらない**

This lesson will continue coverage on phrases regarding "not being able to restrain" one's emotions or feeling. The phrases here with exception to ～にたえない, which is brought up because of ～てこたらない, all use the て form to attach to verbs/adjectives, but be careful about what kind of words they can semantically be used with.

### **～てならない**

～てならない is found primarily in the written language, though this doesn't mean you can't hear it be used in the spoken language, and its purpose is to show that a certain feeling can't be helped being felt/thought. If the verb, though, does not refer to emotion or something spontaneous, it cannot be used. This pattern, also, does not attach to the negative form.

1. 不思議に思えてならない。

I can't help but think it's strange.



2. 悪化するように思えてならない。

I can't help but think that it's going to get worse.

3. もう10年も故郷ふるさとに帰っていないので、両親に会いたくてならない。

Since it's already been 10 years since I haven't been home at my hometown, I can't help but want to meet my parents.

**漢字 Note:** 故郷 may also be read as こきょう.

4. 肘ひじが痛くてならない。

I can't help but think about my hurting elbow.

5. 退屈たいくつな日本語の授業に出ていると、眠くてならない。

I can't help but sleep when I'm at my boring Japanese class.

6. 毎日寂さびしくてならない。

I can't help but be sad every day.

7. 日本語能力試験が心配でならない。

I can't help but worry about the JLPT.

8. 失敗するような気がしてなりません。

I can't help but have the feeling that I'm going to fail.

**Warning Note:** Do not confuse this with the must/must not pattern ～てはならない.

## ～てやまない

～てやまない is a somewhat 硬かたい phrase that is used to show that one will continue to be holding a strong feeling. You just won't stop. It is used with verbs concerning emotion, but it is not used with emotional verbs that describe temporary states. The grammatical person is usually first person. Understandably, it is not appropriate to attach this phrase to the negative form.

9. この写真に写うつっているのは私が愛してやまない犬だ。

The thing in this picture is a dog that I shall always love.

10. 親は子供の将来を期待してやまないものだ。

Parents never stop hoping for their children;s future.

11. 愛犬が死んで悲しくてやまない。

I will continue to be sad over my beloved dog dying.

12. 皆さんの幸せを願ってやみません。

I will continue to wish for everyone's happiness.

13. ご活躍かつやくを願ってやまない。

I can't stop wishing for you to flourish.

## ～てしかたがない

～てしかたがない is very similar to ～てならない, but since it originally referred to there not being a way to withstand or conquer, it gives off a feeling that one can't stand something while thinking at the same time that there is nothing else that could be done. Therefore, it is also very common in the spoken language. This is unlike ～てならない which is often felt to be quite old-fashioned.

～てならない and ～てしかたがない are different when the verb doesn't express something spontaneous or emotional, in which case you use ～てしかたがない because nothing is predicated in its definition that it must be used with a verb of emotion. However, this does not mean that ～てしかたがない can't be used with verbs of spontaneity and or emotion because it still can.

**Variant Note:** ～しようがない and ～てしようがない are more casual versions with the latter being the most casual.

---

### Examples

14. もう残念でしかたがない。

It's no use that it's already regrettable.

15. いくら着込んでも寒くてしょうねーな。

No matter how much I wear, I'm still cold!

16. 彼が言うと、僕を非難しているように聞こえて {ならない・しかたがない}。

Whenever he says (something), I can't help but hear it that he's criticizing me.

17. 朝っぱらからくそ犬めが鳴くんで、うるさくしょうがねーよ。(Vulgar)

Since the damn dog barks from early in the morning, it's annoying as hell.

18. 抽選ちゅうせんにもれたなんて、残念でしかたないね。

It can't be helped that I'm disappointed that I didn't get drawn.

## ～にたえる・～にたえない

耐える means "to endure". ～に耐える is seen after nouns and verbs of personal attention to show the worth of something. With する verbs, する is dropped. For example, it is used in contexts such as being worth to read, hear, criticize, applaud, value, etc.

～にたえない, though, has two usages. When used with the 連体形, it means "cannot stand/endure to...". When used **after a noun**, it shows a strong emotional reaction in which one can't hold back such emotions. This may sound very similar to the first usage, but this usage is strictly used with nouns.

**Spelling Note:** The phrase can also be spelled as に堪えない.

**Style/Word Choice Note:** It is somewhat of a stiff phrase and used with a limited number of nouns such as 感謝, 感激, 慙愧ざんき(shame), 等.

---

### Examples

19. 感謝に耐えません。  
I can't help but thank you.
20. 見るに耐えないOLだぞ。  
She's a butt-ugly office lady.
21. 慙愧ざんき（の念）に堪えない。  
To be deeply ashamed of oneself.
22. お忙しいところを多くの方にお集まりいただき、感激に堪えません。（謙譲語）  
I am overwhelmed with emotion from receiving all of you gathering while you are all busy.
23. 気の毒で同情に堪えない。  
I am deeply sorry for you and sympathize with you.
24. 誠まことに慨嘆がいたんに堪えない。  
It is truly a matter for great regret.
25. 父は聞くに耐えない歌たいぶりをする。  
My dad has an awful manner of singing.
26. 鑑賞に耐えるものだ。  
It is something worth appreciating.

**Word Note:** Again, this phrase is used with limited words such as 見る、聞く、批判、鑑賞かんしょう、議論、etc.

### ～てたまらない

Although usually left in かな, if you do see this pattern written in 漢字, don't confuse the reading for the one in ～（に）堪えない. They're not the same, of course. This is a very common phrase in the spoken language, unlike a lot of the phrases in this lesson, and it is a strong speech style meant to show that one can't resist a certain emotion, sense, or want.

～てたまらない can't be used with spontaneous verbs. This is contrast with things like ～てならない and ～てしかたがない. On the other hand, if you are using an adjective that shows an objective degree, ～てたまらない can be used but ～てならない・～てしかたがない can't.

---

### Examples

26. 日本へ帰りたくてたまらない。

I can't stand but want to go back home to Japan.

27. 隣の車のマフラー音がうるさくて、たまらないよ。

The muffler of the car next to me is annoying, and I can't stand it.

28. 隣の駐車場の車の音がうるさくて、たまりません。困ってますよ。

The car noise from the parking lot next to me is annoying, and I can't stand it. I'm at a loss.

29. お兄さんは毎日退屈で堪らないそうです。

I hear that your older brother can't stand him being bored every day?

### 第236課: Can't Help III: ～ないではすまない, ～ないではおかない, ～を余儀なく[される・させる], & ～を禁じ得ない

These are even more difficult phrases dealing with not being able to help one's emotions, etc. Not only do you need to try to separate these in your mind from the phrases found in the two previous lessons about this topic, but you're going to have to pay even more attention to the differences among these patterns.

#### ～ {ないで・ずに} はすまない

Also seen as ～ずにはすまない, which is more formal but can still be found used in the spoken language, is used to show that if one thinks from a societal point of view with a given circumstance, doing something is simply and certainly unavoidable. It is difficult to use, however, when you think that you have to do something from personal emotion. Given that the phrase is stiff, this should be understandable.

1. 人の心を傷つけてしまったなら、謝らずにはすまない。

If you are to hurt someone's heart, you can't avoid apologizing.

2. 借金をせずにはすむまい。(古風で、硬い言い方)

You can't get by without borrowing money.

3. 親に知られたら叱られないではすまないよ。

If your parents found out, you won't be able to avoid getting scolded.

The non-double negative form above result in ～ないで済む, which means "to get by without...". Just as in English, this implies a good thing because you got away without doing something. 済む itself may show that something is done.

4. 済んだことだ。

It's finished.

5. 済んだのですか。

Is it over?

6. 金を払わないで済みました。

I got by without paying for it.

7. 気づかれずに済む。

To escape attention.

8. 彼が怪我けがをせずに済んでよかった。

I'm glad that he got by without injury.

9. 冗談じょうだんですまない。

To go beyond a joke. (Shows guilt)

10. 済んだことは元もとに戻もどらない。

What's done cannot be undone.

11. 蜂を見つけたら、ゆっくり離れたほうがいい。体に止まっても振り払わずにじっとしていれば刺されずに済むよ。

If you are to find a bee, it's best to separate oneself from it slowly. Even if it lands on you, you can leave without being stung if you stay still.

12. もう一つは、犯行後、同じように夜を待ち、普通の道を河内長野方面に向かって歩いたかもしれないことだ。これは車道以外に近道の旧道もあるので、ここを歩けば夜間は誰にも見られずに済む。

Another possibility is that (the criminal) waited just like that for night after the crime and walked down a regular road toward Kawachi-Nagano. This could go without being seen by anyone at night walking through here because there are also old shortcuts aside from the roadway.

From 二重葉脈 by 松本清張.

## ～ {ないで・ずに} はおかない

Also seen as ～ずにはおかない, this pattern is used to show that one will certainly happen naturally or that you won't allow something to stay not being done. It shows strong resolution. The situation where one won't allow for something deals with first person. However, the first situation deals with subjects outside of first person, which includes inanimate things.

13. あの話はやはり嘘だったと、絶対に白状はくじょうさせないではおかないぞ。

If that was indeed a lie, I will absolutely not stand without making (that person) confess.

14. 彼女が歌ったのは聞く人の心を揺ゆさぶらずにはおかない。

What she had sung will surely move the hearts of those who hear.

## ～を余儀なく[される・させる]

余儀 よぎ means "another way/problem" and 余儀ない expresses "out of one's control". So, ～を余儀なくされる, shows that one had to do something that was not of one's will and there was no other choice to get around it. You are essentially driven into a corner in a certain situation. This can also be

seen in the causative as ～を余儀なくさせる. Usually the subject of sentences with ～を余儀なくされる is usually human, but the subject of sentences with ～を余儀なくさせる is usually not human but a something.

15. 悪天候のため試合の中止を余儀なくされました。  
Bad weather made us postpone the match.
16. アメリカの圧力が貿易ばうえき自由化を余儀なくさせた。  
American pressure made free trade unavoidable.
17. 暴風雨で遠足は延期を余儀なくされた。  
We had to put off the field trip due to fierce rain.
18. {余儀ない・やむを得ない} 事情で欠席しました。  
I was absent due to an uncontrollable situation.
19. 辞任を余儀なくされる。  
To become out of one's control to resign.

### ～を禁じ得ない

Although most dictionaries will just tell you this is the same as ～ないではいられない, this is not enough information to help you get a question right about it on the JLPT. Like all the other phrases in this series, this phrase describes not being able to withhold emotions, but this portrays an image of not being able to restrain emotions that have sprung up due to the circumstances. This phrase attaches to nouns that imply emotion. Sentences with it are usually first person.

20. 涙を禁じえなかった。  
I couldn't hold back the tears.
21. 犯人の供述を聞き、犯行動機はんこうどうきの身勝手みがってさに怒いかりを禁じ得なかった。  
I couldn't withhold my anger at the selfishness of the motive from listening to the criminal's affidavit.
22. 同情の念を禁じえない。  
I can't hold back sympathy
23. 残された子犬を見て、涙を禁じ得なかった。  
I couldn't hold back the tears from looking at the puppy that was left.

## 第237課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 3

In this third lesson on verbs with both intransitive and transitive usages, we'll continue to uncover peculiarities in Japanese at the individual word basis.

## する, 増す, 働く, 引く

### する

する is the most important verb in the Japanese language as we have already learned due to how many usages it has and how important those usages are to the entirety of the language. Unsurprisingly, its usages can be classified as either being intransitive or transitive in nature.

As an intransitive verb, する can demonstrate a sense being sensed, in some state (often with onomatopoeia), show the worth of something (as in price), or the elapse of time (with time phrases).

1. アテモヤは砂糖ざとうで煮詰につめたリンゴのような味あじがします。  
The atemoya has a flavor like that of an apple boiled down in sugar.

**Spelling Note:** *Ringo* is seldom spelled as 林檎.

2. 目めがぐるぐると回まわるような眩暈めまいがした。  
I got dizzy as if my eyes were spinning.
3. 耳鳴みなりがするとお化ばけが側がわにいてって本当ほんとうですか。  
Is it true that a ghost is next to you when your ears ring?
4. 背後はいごに強烈きょうれつな爆発音ばくはつおんがした。  
There was the sound of an intense explosion in the background.
5. しばらくしてから行いきましょう。  
Let's go after a little while.

**Spelling Note:** しばらく is sometimes written as 暫く.

6. このネックレスはいくらしたの？  
How much was this necklace?

**Spelling Note:** いくら is seldom spelled as 幾ら.

7. 狭せまくて息いきが詰つまるような感かんじする。  
I feel cramped.
8. 日焼ひやけしちゃった。  
I got sunburned.

As a transitive verb, its primary meaning is “to do.” Aside from its complex grammatical usages that happen to be transitive, it can be used to show occupation, mean “to play (a game/sport/etc.),” “to wear (an accessory)”, or even “to be...(shaped)/to have a...(face)/etc.” when describing appearances.

9. 何なにをしたらいいでしょうか。  
What should I do?
10. ここは、代々だいたいパン屋やをしている老舗しにせです。  
This here is an old bakery past down for generations.

11. 手袋てぶくろをしなさい。

Please wear your gloves.

12. 彼かれは長ながい髪かみをしている。

He has long hair.

13. 買かい物ものでもしょうか。

How about we shop or something?

14. 僕ぼくの勤つとめている会社かいしゃにパチンコをする人ひとが数人すうにんいました。

There were several people who play pachinko at the company where I work.

15. 惑星わくせいってどんな形かたちをしているんですか。

What sort of shape do planets have?

16. 変へんな顔かおしないでよ。

Don't make weird faces.

**Spelling Note:** 為る may very well be the Kanji for “to do,” but it is no longer used in regular writing. If, though, you feel compelled to know how in its truly transitive sense of “to do” is spelled in Kanji, then this is how.

---

### 増す

増す is a literary verb that means “to increase.” In this regard, it is very similar to the intransitive/transitive verb pair 増える and 増やす. 増える, unlike 増す, is commonly used in both the written and spoken language. It, though, can have emotion attached to it whereas 増す is only used in an objective sense. However, unlike 増す, it cannot be used to express (dramatic) increase in degree (See Exs. 17, 18, and 21).

17. プミポン国王こくおうの喪失そうしつで、タイの将来しょうらいへの不安ふあんが増ましている。

With the loss of King Bhumibol, suspense over Thailand's future is massing.

18. 極右政党きょくうせいとうが勢いきおいを増ましている。

The far right political party is gathering strength.

19. 日本にほんでは高齢者こうれいしゃの人口じんこうが増ましている。

In Japan, the elderly population is increasing.

20. 前日ぜんじつの大雨おおあめで川かわの水嵩みずかさが増まして、川かわが氾濫はんらんした。

In the heavy rain the other day, the river's banks enlarged, causing the river to inundate.

21. 地震波じしんはは、深ふかさと共ともに速度そくどを増ましている。

The seismic waves are increasing in depth as well as speed.



22. 研究人けんきゅうじんの人数にんずうが増ふえた。

The number of researchers has increased.

23. 交通事故こうつうじこの数かずが増ふえているのは何故なぜだろうか。

Why is that the number of traffic accidents is increasing?

24. 強盗ごうとうが増ふえてきているため、宝石店ほうせきてんなどでは厳重げんじゅうな防犯対策ぼうはんたいさくが必要ひつようです。

Because robberies have risen, strong crime prevention measures are necessary at places such as jewelry stores.

増やす is used in the sense of “to increase the number of (resources).” When used in the sense of “to increase (fortune/animals/plants)” as in promulgation, it is often spelled as 殖やす. When this meaning is used in an intransitive sense, 殖える can be used.

25. 相続財産そうぞくざいさんが {増ふえて・殖ふえて} いきます。

Your inheritance will increase.

26. 商品しょうひんの種類しゅるいを増ふやすことで、カナダでの売うり上あげを伸ばしたいと思おもいます。

By increasing the variety of merchandise, I would like to expand sales in Canada.

27. 生物せいぶつの種類しゅるいを殖ふやしていきたいと思おもいます。

I would like to increase the diversity of living things.

28. 不動産ふどうさんを活用かつようして財産ざいさんを殖ふやす。

To increase assets by utilizing real estate.

---

## 働く

As an intransitive verb, 働く means “to work” or “to function.” As a transitive verb, it means “to perpetrate.”

29. 中国ちゅうごくでは、出稼でかせぎ労働者ろうどうしゃの多おおくは、工場こうじょうなどで働はたらいているようです。

In China, a lot of migrant workers seem to work at places like factories.

30. 上司じょうしが不正ふせいを働はたらいていることにたまたま気づいてしまいました。

I've incidentally noticed that my boss is committing fraud.

**Spelling Note:** たまたま is seldom spelled as 偶々.

31. 悪事あくじを働はたらいても何なににも感かんじないという人ひとは少すくない。

There are few people who don't feel anything from having committed an evil deed.

32. 息子むすこが盗ぬすみを働はたらいているとは考かんがえたくなかった。

I didn't want to think that my son was committing robberies.

---

## 引く

As a transitive verb, ひく can mean a variety of things with just as many ways to spell it. 引く just happens to be the most basic way to spell it. As an intransitive verb, it simply means “to ebb/fade.”

33. くじを引ひいてみました。  
I tried drawing a lot.

**Spelling Note:** くじ may also be spelled as 籤.

34. 参加者さんかしゃの目めを惹ひいていました。  
It had been drawing the participants' attention.

**Spelling Note:** When used to mean “to attract/captivate,” ひく is usually written as 惹く.

35. 先日せんじつ、風邪かぜを引きしました。  
I caught a cold the other day.

36. {まっすぐに線せん・直線ちよくせん} を引ひいてください。  
Please draw a straight line.

**Spelling Note:** まっすぐ may alternatively be spelled as 真っ直ぐ.

37. 辞書じしょを引ひいてください。  
Please consult a dictionary.

38. 3さんから2にを引ひくと、1いちになります。  
When you subtract 2 from 3, you get 1.

39. カードを引ひいてください。  
Please draw a card.

40. 熱ねつが引ひいてから2、3みっ日かは外出がいしゅつを控ひかえてください。  
Refrain from going out for two to three days after the fever has receded.

41. 潮が引ひいたら歩あるいて渡わたれます。  
You can walk across once the tide has ebbed away.

42. 孫氏そんしは長年ながねん、政治せいじの表舞台おもてぶたいを {引退いんたいしている・退しりぞいている/退ひいている}。  
Mr. Sun has retired from the center stage of politics for many years.

**Spelling Note:** When used to mean “to draw back/retire,” ひく is often written as 退く but it becomes indistinguishable from the verb しりぞく, which is far more common and used for the same purpose.

43. 挽ひき肉にくを自分じぶんで挽ひきたいのですが、どんな肉にくを用意よういすればいいでしょうか。

I'd like to mince ground meat by myself, but what sort of meat should I prepare?

**Spelling Note:** When used to mean “to saw/mince,” ひく is usually written as 挽く.

44. コーヒー豆まめを {挽ひく・碾ひく} と、いい香かおりがします。  
Coffee grains have a good scent when you grind them.

**Spelling Note:** When used to mean “to grind/mill,” ひく is often written as 挽く. It may also be traditionally written as 碾く.

45. 抹茶まっちゃはなぜ石臼いしうすで {挽ひく・碾ひく} んですか。  
Why is it that you grind matcha in a stone mortar?

**Culture Note:** 抹茶 is powdered green tea.

46. 私わたしが自転車じてんしゃに乗のって直進ちょくしんしていたところ、前まえからきた左折させつする車くるまに轢ひかれました。  
As I was riding straight ahead on my bicycle, I was knocked down by a car turning left which had come from ahead.

**Spelling Note:** When used to mean “to run over (with a vehicle)”, ひく is usually spelled as 轢く.

47. ピアノを弾ひけますか。  
Can you play the piano?

**Spelling Note:** When used to mean “to play (a string instrument)”, ひく is spelled as 弾く.

**Spelling Notes:** ひく may seldom be spelled as 曳く with a nuance of “to tow.” This is especially the case with towing boats, which may be expressed alternatively with the verb 曳航する. When used to mean “to pull/drag ahead,” ひく may seldom be spelled as 牽く. In this sense of “traction/hauling,” the verb 牽引する would be far more common.

## 第238課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part 4

In this fourth lesson on verbs with both intransitive and transitive usages, we'll continue to uncover peculiarities in Japanese at the individual word basis.

持つ, 馳せる, 跳ねる, はだける, 生じる, 踊る, 寄せる, 誤る, 笑う, つとめる

### 持つ

As a transitive verb, 持つ means “to hold/possess/have.” As an intransitive verb, it means to keep (as in perishable goods) or “to be durable (as in the body).” As an intransitive verb, it is usually spelled as もつ.

1. 誰だれでも自分じぶんの行動こうどうに責任せきにんをもち持っている。  
Everyone holds responsible for his own actions.
  2. ブランドの財布さいふをもちっています。  
I have a brand wallet.
  3. このままでは体からだがもたない。  
At this rate, my body won't last.
  4. お味噌汁みそしるを作つくったら、何日なんにちくらいもちますか。  
Once you've made miso soup, about how many days is it good for?
- 

### 馳せる

馳せる has almost entirely disappeared from Modern Japanese, but its grammar is interesting. In the physical sense, it either means “to hurry/run to...” or “to ride...fast.” Nowadays, the verb is usually limited to set phrases like 思いを馳せる (to give more than a passing thought to...).

5. 彼かれは頼朝よりとものもとへ（と）馳はせようとした。  
He ran for Yoritomo's side.
  6. 城しろの方ほうから馬うまが {走はしり寄よって・駆かけ寄よって・馳はせて} 来きた。  
Horses came running from the direction of the castle.
  7. 武者むしゃが馬うまを {走はしらせながら・馳はせながら} 矢やを射いた。  
The warriors shot arrows as they raced their horses.
  8. 米国べいこくの暮くらしに思おもいを {巡めぐらして・馳はせて} います。  
I've been thinking nostalgically upon my living in America.
- 

### 跳ねる

*Haneru* as an intransitive verb means “to jump/leap/splash,” and as a transitive verb it means “to splash/hit (with a car)/reject” among other things. Traditionally, the intransitive form is spelled as 跳ねる and the transitive form is spelled as 撥ねる. Usually, though, 跳ねる or はねる will work.

Grammatically speaking, the intransitive form cannot be used in certain forms such as the passive. In such instances, the transitive form must be used.

9. 揚げ物ものをしていて油あぶらが跳はねて目めに入はいった。  
I was deep-frying food when oil splashed up and got in my eyes.
10. 海面かいめんには、魚さかなが跳はねています。  
Fish are leaping up from the sea.

11. あの車くるまは、水溜みずたまりの泥どろを歩行者ほこうしゃに {跳はねた・撥はねた}。

That car splashed mud from the muddle over the pedestrian(s).

12. 泥どろが私わたしの晴はれ着ぎに跳はねてしまった。

Mud splashed onto my best clothes.

13. 車くるまに水みずをはねられて濡ぬれてしまった。

I got wet from being splattered with water by a car.

14. 走行中そうこうちゅうに丸太まるたのようなものをはねてしまった。

I ran over a log of some sort while driving.

15. 警備員けいびいんの男性だんせいがはねられて死亡しぼうしました。

A male security officer passed away from being ran over.

16. 検査けんさで不良ふりょう品をはね（のけ）る。

To exclude defective products in inspection.

**Spelling Note:** *Hanenokeru* may be spelled as 撥ね除ける.

In addition to the meanings mentioned above, the transitive 撥ねる may also be used to mean “to point up/add a hook.” This is typically in reference to things like mustaches or the hooks on characters.

17. 「干」という漢字かんじを撥はねて書かくと、「于」という別字べつじになります。

The Kanji "干" when written with a hook becomes “于,” a separate character.

The transitive 撥ねる also has the meaning “to make nasal.” This is in reference to sound changes in Japanese that result in sounds being turned into ん.

18. 「死しにて」は「死しんで」と撥はねます。

We nasalize “shinite” as “shinde.”

The transitive *haneru* also has the meaning of “to behead.” Although typically spelled as はねる, its traditional spelling is 刎ねる.

19. 首くびを刎はねろ！

Behead him!

**Word Note:** *Kubi* may refer to the head along with the neck. This comes from the fact that the neck is the point of severing in a beheading.

Historically, 頸 should be the character for neck because 首 refers to the head in Chinese. In anatomy, the head is often referred to as 頭部（とうぶ） while the neck is referred to as 頸部（けいぶ）.

開ける is unique in that it traditionally creates an intransitive/transitive verb pair with 開かる. From appearances alone, 開かる should be the intransitive form and 開ける should be the transitive form, but now, 開ける can be used as both to mean “to open (one’s clothes) to expose (one’s chest).” Although not limited to the chest, it can be used to indicate clothing no longer covering some part of the body.

20. 足あしを動うごかしても、裾すそが {開はだけの・開はだかる} 心配しんばいなどありません。

Even if you move your legs, there’s no worry of your cuffs being exposed.

21. 着用ちゃくようが困難こんなんで、胸むねが開はだけの恐おそれもある。  
Wearing is difficult, and there is also the fear of your chest becoming exposed.

22. 彼かれはシャツのボタンを外はずし、筋肉質きんにくしつの胸むねを開はだけた。  
He undid the buttons of his shirt and exposed his muscular chest.

One meaning that 開かる doesn’t share with 開ける is “to obstruct/block (the way),” and in this sense, it is usually seen in the compound verb 立ちはだかる.

23. 目めの前まえに大おおきな壁かべが立たちはだかっている。  
A large wall stands in the way in front of my eyes.

---

### 生じる

The verb 生じる means “to happen/occur/germinate.” For the most part, it is usually used as an intransitive verb. However, it can technically also be used as a transitive verb. This is possible when the subject of the verb can be viewed as the agent. Yet, many speakers don’t like the verb being used as a transitive verb if it’s not used in the causative form 生じさせる. This is why, as the example sentences demonstrate, there will always be a way to phrase out the transitive 生じる.

24. 表面近ひょうめんちかくの細胞さいぼうから芽めが {出でる・生しょうじる} ことが分かりました。

We discovered that buds sprout from the cells close to the surface.

25. その違ちがいにによって、貿易ばうえきから利益りえきが生しょうじる。  
Based on that difference, profit results from trade.

26a. 豆腐とうふにカビが {生はえた・生しょうじた} 。

26b. 豆腐とうふがカビを生しょうじた。

Mold grew on the tofu.

**Spelling Note:** *Kabi* may also be spelled as 黴.

27. 不利益ふりえきを {被かぶる・生しょうじる} 可能性かのうせいが高たかい。  
There is a high probability of suffering a loss.

28. 多少たしょうの混乱こんらんを {招まねく・生しょうじる} 言葉ことばの一ひとつです。

This is one (of several) words that causes some confusion.

29. 呼吸こきゅうに問題もんだい {が・を} 生しょうじる疾患しっかんでは、呼吸障害こきゅうしょうがただけが問題もんだいになることは少すくない。

In ailments that cause problems in one's respiration, there are few instances in which respiratory impairment is the only problem at hand.

30. 副作用ふくさようを生しょうじ (させ) ることなく良好りょうこうな睡眠すいみんを得えることができます。

We will be able to get satisfactory sleep without causing any side effects.

31. 免疫機能めんえききのうに支障ししょうを {来きたす・生しょうじ (させ) る} 重篤じゅうとくな疾病しっぺいに罹かかってしまう。

To suffer from a severe illness that creates an impediment to one's immune system.

**Word Notes:** There are several words for "illness." Of these include 病気, 病い, 疾病, 疾患, and 患い.

疾病 is a clinical terminology for "illness." 疾患 refers to ailments that bring about physical and or mental symptoms. 病気 is the more general term for "illness" used most commonly in the spoken language and in more subjective situations. 病い is the native word for "sickness," but it takes on a personal tone to an ailment. Whereas 疾患 can refer to a medical state of function failure, 胸の病い would refer to personal suffering in the chest. The native equivalent of 疾患 is 患い and is even more emphatic than 病い, but it is more so used to refer to suffering of the heart. However, it is rarely used outside of literature.

---

### 踊る

踊る can be used to mean "to dance" in an intransitive or transitive sense. When used to mean "to pound/throb/jump," it's spelled as 躍る.

32. ワルツを踊おどりましょう。

Let's dance the waltz.

33. 心こころが躍おどっている。

My heart is throbbing.

---

### 寄せる

As an intransitive verb, 寄せる means "to surge (as in waves)." As a transitive verb, it means "to come/bring near."

34. 沖おきに波なみが寄よせている。

Waves are surging in the open sea.

35. 彼かれは耳元みみもとに口くちを寄よせてそっと囁ささやいた。  
He brought his mouth near to my ears and softly whispered.

36. いつも眉間みけんに皺しわを寄よせている人ひとといつも笑顔えがおの人ひととはどちらが好きですか。  
Which do you like, people who are always furrowing their brows or people who always have a smile on their face?

37. 今日きょうも、マムシたちが草藪くさやぶに身みを寄よせていた。  
The pit vipers were living under the clump of bushes today as well.

**Spelling Note:** *Mamushi* may also be spelled as 蝮.

---

### 誤る

Traditionally, 誤る was the intransitive version of 過つ, both revolving around expressing failure/mistake. Nowadays, 過つ is hardly used aside from its noun form 過ち (fault/indiscretion), and 誤る exists both as an intransitive and a transitive verb, but mostly a transitive verb aside from when 誤った is used similarly to 間違った (mistaken) before nouns.

38. どこで道みちを誤あやまってしまったのだろうか。  
Where have I gone wrong?

39. 操作そうさを誤あやまって相手先あいてさきの電話番号でんわばんごうを一ひとつ削除さくじょしてしまった。  
I made a mistake in handling (my phone) and accidentally deleted one of my contact's phone numbers.

40. あなたは鍼はりについて誤あやまった認識にんしきをしていませんか。  
Do you not have a mistaken perception about acupuncture?

---

### 笑う

As an intransitive verb, 笑う means "to laugh," but as a transitive verb it means "to laugh at/make fun of." As a transitive verb, it can alternatively be spelled as 嗤う.

41. 犬いぬも笑わらうんでしょうか。  
Do dogs also laugh?

42. 彼かれの嬉うれしそうに笑わらっている姿すがたを想像そうぞうしてみた。  
I tried imagining the look of him happily laughing.

43. 一円いちえんを {笑わらう・嗤わらう} 者ものは一円いちえんに泣なく。  
He who makes fun of one yen will cry at one yen.

44. 目糞鼻糞めくそはなくそを {笑わらう・嗤わらう}。  
The pot calls the kettle black.



45. 何故笑なぜわらってはいけない場面ばめんで笑わらってしまうんだらうか。  
We do (I/we) laugh in scenes where we ought not to laugh?

---

### つとめる

*Tsutomeru* has both intransitive and transitive nuances. They are conveniently spelled differently.

Intransitive Nuances: 勤める, 努める

Transitive Nuance: 務める

46. 大手会社おおてがいしゃに勤つとめています。  
I work at a major company.

47. 実現じつげんに努つとめています。  
I'm striving to realize it.

48. 代理人だいにんを務つとめています。  
I'm serving as a proxy/agent/representative.

There is also an intransitive 勤まる・務まる, which is used to mean "to be fit for (job/post)." In the case of a typical job, the former spelling is used. In the case of a typical post, the latter spelling is used.

49. 私に務まるだらうか。  
Am I even fit (for the post)?

50. とても勤つとまりそうもない。  
I'm far from fit (for the job).

## **第239課: Intransitive & Transitive: Part V (Sino-Japanese Verbs)**

In our fifth installment on verbs that do not change based on whether it is used as an intransitive or a transitive verb, we will focus on Sino-Japanese examples.

There are plenty of verbs from Chinese that can be used either in an intransitive sense or a transitive sense because there is no morphological distinction made in Chinese. Therefore, the lack of marking transitivity found in Chinese simply carries over into Japanese. Japanese then compensates by using its backup system of particles, if you will, to help the speaker determine how the verb should be interpreted.

This, as one might imagine, does cause issues. As you will soon see in the example sentences, many speakers frequently change する to される or to させる depending on whether they wish to make it clear that the Sino-Japanese verb in question is being used in an intransitive or transitive sense respectively. This causes grammatical ambiguity, understandably, because される and させる stand for the passive and causative forms respectively.

Before you go on thinking that Japanese is being overly complicated, think about English for one moment. English is just as guilty as Chinese for not marking transitivity in verbal conjugations.

- i. I started the movie three minutes ago.
- ii. The movie started three minutes ago.

If English does a poor job in marking transitivity, and if it's the case that Japanese has borrowed many words from English, one might also assume that Sino-Japanese verbs are not the only foreign verbs that have this transitivity problem.

iii. 事務処理能力じむしよりのうりよくをアップすることで、仕事しごとのすべての能力のうりよくがアップするのですから、効率化こうりつかをアップさせましょう。  
By **raising** one's clerical work capacity, all your job skills **will improve**, so try **upping** your efficiency.

This example marvelously demonstrates the flux in transitivity that you will find with the verbs discussed in this lesson. Now, to learn as many of these verbs as possible, each Sino-Japanese verb taught will have a minimum of two sentences to account for its intransitive and transitive use. If nuance requires further investigation, more example sentences will be provided.

## Common Dual Purpose Sino-Japanese Verbs

- ・ 変形する - To transform/metamorphize/deform

変形する is used both in the spoken and written language. Its intransitive and transitive usages are both very common.

1. 式しきを変形へんけいする問題もんだいです。  
This problem is about transforming an equation.

2. 軟骨なんこつが増殖ぞうしょくしたり、骨ほねが軟化なんかししたりすることで、関節かんせつが変形へんけいしていきます。  
Joints become deformed by cartilage increasing, bones softening, etc.

- 
- ・ 分解する - To disassemble/dismantle/decompose/factor/deblock

分解する is used both in the spoken language and written language. It is especially important in construction, science, and computer science. Its intransitive and transitive usages are both very common.

3. 水みずを電気分解でんきぶんかいすると、水素すいと酸素さんそが発生はっせいし水みずが分解ぶんかいします。  
When you electrolyze water, hydrogen and oxygen are produced, which results in the water decomposing.

4. 下記かきの式しきを因数分解いんすうぶんかいしなさい。  
Factor the equation(s) below.

5. 脂肪しぼうを分解ぶんかいする酵素こうそがあります。  
There is an enzyme that breaks down fat.

---

・ 決定する - To decide/determine

決定する is largely literary, but it is commonly used in news reports. Its intransitive form is more common than its transitive form, but neither usage is rare by any means.

6. 委員会いいんかいは今年度こんねんどの政策方針せいさくほうしんを決定けっていした。

The committee decided upon the line of policy for this fiscal year.

7. 放送日ほうそうひが決定けっていしました。

*Hōsōbi ga kettei shimashita.*

The air date has been determined.

**Grammar Note:** Some speakers use 決定される for the intransitive usage, but this is not grammatically necessary.

---

・ 内定する - To make a tentative decision

内定する is formal and literary. Its intransitive usage is the most common.

8. 先週せんしゅうの選挙せんきょで落選らくせんした〇〇氏が内定ないていしたことが分かりました。

It has been discovered that Mr. ##, who lost in last week's election, has been unofficially decided (for a certain post).

9. 役員人事やくいんじんじを内定ないていしました。

We have tentatively decided on officer resources.

---

・ 継続する

継続する is more so literary than a spoken word, but it is quite commonly used adverbially in the gerund—as 継続して—to express a continuation of a certain situation. This comes from its transitive usage. Its intransitive usage is more or less a formal synonym of 続く.

10. 既存のドメインを継続けいぞくして使つかえますか。

*Kison/kizon no domein wo keizoku shite tsukaemasu ka?*

Can I continue using my existing domain?

**Reading Note:** The traditional reading of 既存 is きそん, but きぞん is becoming more and more common. In the case of this word, pronouncing it as きぞん helps distinguish it from 毀損 (defamation), which is read as きそん.

11. 経済けいざいの進展しんてんが継続けいぞくしている。

Economic development is continuing.

---

・ 持続する – To persist/last/sustain

Although similar to 継続する, 持続する is used to indicate that status is persisting and being sustained whereas 継続する only describes a condition that is continuing from before. An end point to the state in question is left far more uncertain with 持続する than with 継続する. Similarly, it too is largely used in the written language, but it is also commonly used in news reports. Both its intransitive and transitive usages are commonly used.

12. 平均へいきん6ろく時間じかんほど {効きき目め・薬効やくこう} が持続じぞくします。

The effects last for an average of approximately six hours.

13. 調和ちようわのとれた関係かんけいを持続じぞくすることが第一だいいちです。  
Sustaining a balanced relationship is first and foremost.

---

・ 連続する – To occur in succession

連続する is commonly used in both the spoken and written language. Its transitive usage is not as common, but when the verb is used as a gerund in 連続して, it can come from either its intransitive or transitive usage.

14. 就職活動しゅうしょくかつどうは失敗しっぱいが連続れんぞくするのが当あたり前まえだ。

It's only natural to continuously fail in job hunting.

15. 高品質加工こうひんしつかこうを連続れんぞくすることが可能かのうとなった。  
It has become possible to continually perform high quality manufacturing.

16. 連続れんぞくして予約よやくを取とることはできますか。  
Is it possible to continuously make reservations?

**Nuance Note:** If there is in fact brief intervals in repeatedly doing an action, 連続で rather than 連続して is appropriate.

---

・ 展開する – To develop/unfold/extend

As an intransitive verb, 展開する is essentially interchangeable with 広がる, but 広がる is far more common in both the spoken and written language. In the sense of "to develop/unfold," however, it can be used in an intransitive and or transitive sense. In an intransitive sense, many speakers opt to change it to 展開される. This is likely because the agent of the development is implicitly felt to be relevant. Overall, the verb is more so used in the written language, but it isn't all that rare in the spoken language.

17. 遙はるかに佐賀平野さがへいやが {広ひろがっている・展開てんかいしている}。  
The Saga Plain extends in the distance.

18. 有意義ゆういぎな議論ぎろんが展開てんかいされました。  
A meaningful discussion developed (by the participants).

19. 専門家せんもんかたちが精力的せいりよくてきな活動かつどうを展開てんかいした。  
The experts developed an energetic activity.

---

・ 移動する – To move/transfer/migrate

The verb 移動する is used as a slightly formal means to simply show the movement/transferring/migration from one place to another. You will see it used in all sorts of situations including in computer science settings when you move things around. This verb is slightly more common in the written language, but it wouldn't be odd to use it in the spoken language.

Its transitive use is sometimes represented with 移動させる. However, this is not grammatically necessary. In fact, it can be grammatically confusing because it should only be the causative form as in “(X has) Y move Z...” like in Ex. 22.

20. 病院びょういんの指示しじで福祉避難所ふくしひなんじょに移動いどうしました。  
I moved to a welfare shelter under the direction of the hospital.

21. ファイルやフォルダを移動いどう {させて・して} みましょう。  
Try moving files and folders.

22. 生徒せいとたちを高台たかだいに移動いどうさせてください。  
Please move the students to high ground.

---

・ 縮小する – To reduce/shrink/curtail

The intransitive usage is most often seen as 縮小される. Although this does imply some agent doing the action, the main reasoning for why 縮小する is not simply used is because many speakers don't register it as being both intransitive and intransitive. Its transitive usage, however, is extremely common.

23. ファイルサイズを縮小しゅくしょうしてください。  
Please shrink the file size.

24. 金融資産きんゆうしさんの格差かくさが縮小しゅくしょうした。  
Financial asset disparity has shrunk.

25. ツールバーが縮小しゅくしょうされてしまった。  
The tool bar got minimized.

---

・ 拡大する – To magnify/enlarge/amplify/expand

The verb 拡大する is slightly formal but still common in both the spoken and written language. Some speakers inadvertently use 拡大される when used intransitively, but unless you wish to implicitly hint at an agent, then this is not grammatically necessary.

26. 資源価格上昇しげんかかくじょうしょうで輸出ゆしゅつが拡大かくだいしている。  
Exports are expanding due to rises in the price of resources.

27. 画面がめんが自動的じどうてきに拡大かくだいされます。  
The screen automatically enlarges.

28. 各国かっこくが現在げんざいも兵器生産へいきせいさんを拡大かくだいし、海外か  
いがいへ軍隊ぐんたいを増派ぞうはしている。  
Even now, each nation is expanding its weapon production and is sending  
troop reinforcements overseas.

---

・ 完成する – To complete/accomplish

When something has been completely accomplished, and the result is visible for all to see, you can use the verb 完成する. It is used in both the spoken and written language, and its intransitive and transitive usages are both very common.

29. 津波避難つなみひなんビルが完成かんせいしました。  
The tsunami refuge building has been completed.

30. 防災ぼうさいマップを完成かんせいしました。  
I've completed the disaster prevention map.

---

・ 完了する – To complete/conclude

When you conclude a task, you can use the verb 完了する. It is rather formal and both its intransitive and transitive usages are very common.

31. 修正しゅうせいが完了かんりょうしました。  
Editing has been completed.

32. 登録とうろくを完了かんりょうしました。  
I've completed the registration.

---

・ 終了する – To end/close/terminate

When something ends/terminates, you can use the verb 終了する. It's somewhat formal and more common in the written language. Its intransitive and transitive usages are both very common. It is important to note that this verb does not imply that a task has been thoroughly completed before ending.

33. ヘドロの浚渫しゅんせつは1990せんきゅうひゃくきゅうじゅう年ねんに終了しゅうりょうし、豊ゆたかな海うみが再生さいせいした。

The sludge dredging was terminated in 1990, and the rich sea restored itself.

34. 募集ぼしゅうを終了しゅうりょうしました。

We've ended recruiting/taking applications/raising (donations).

---

・実現する – To implement/materialize/realize

The intransitive use of 実現する is the primary usage of this verb. As a transitive verb, many speakers are compelled to use 実現させる instead. This doesn't always necessarily mean the causative nuance of "to make/let someone..." is literally intended, but it will always imply a more direct involvement of the agent to make something happen.

35. 勤勉きんべんに働はたらき、辛抱しんぼうすれば夢ゆめは実現じつげんするでしょう。

If you work diligently and persevere, your dreams will surely be realized.

36. 持続的じぞくてきな経済成長けいざいせいちょうを実現じつげんするためには、現在げんざいよりも大胆だいたんな為替かわせ・金融緩和政策きんゆうかんわせいさくに加くわえて、雇用こようの拡大かくだい、賃金ちんぎんの引ひき上あげなど消費拡大しょうひかくだいに繋つながらる政策せいさくを進すすめる必要ひつようがあります。

In order to implement sustainable economic growth, in addition to far more audacious exchange and finance easing policies than now, we must forward policies that are linked to consumption expansion by such means as expanding employment, raising wages, etc.

37. 居心地いごちの良よさを実現じつげん {した・させた} モダンな住宅じゅうたくです。

This is a modern home that realizes coziness.

38. 息子が夢を実現 {しました・させました} 。

My son has realized his dreams.

---

・転換する – To convert/divert/changeover/switch-over

The verb 転換する is generally used to indicate changes into tendency/directives. So, even though the fundamentals of the matter may not change, the direction of said entity might. This word is appropriate in both the spoken and the written language. Its intransitive usage is most common. As an intransitive verb, the form 転換させる is preferred, especially when emphasis is placed on the agent.

39. 下降かこうトレンドが上向うわむきに転換てんかんしました。

The downward trend has switched upward.

40. 日銀にちぎんは、金融政策きんゆうせいさくを転換てんかんしました。

The Bank of Japan has shifted its finance policies.

41. ニクソン大統領だいとうりょうは、それまでの冷戦構造れいせんこうぞうを転換てんかんさせました。

President Nixon had changed-over the structuring of the Cold War up to that time.

---

・変換する – To change/convert/transform

The verb 変換する is a somewhat technical verb that indicates switching out/ converting something from one thing to another. However, it cannot refer to religious conversion. That would be handled by the verb 改宗する. Its intransitive usage is rare, so much so that most speakers replace it with 変換される. Although this grammatically implicitly hints at an agent, this is not usually meant by the speaker. Rather, using the “passive form” is a means of lexicalizing a transitive verb in an intransitive means.

42. 色々いろいろと操作そうさしているうちにワードの文字もじが変換へんかん {されました・しました}。

While doing all sorts of operations, the characters in Word (got) converted.

43. 動画どうがをPSP用ように変換へんかんしました。

I converted the video to be for the PSP.

---

・集中する – To concentrate/converge/centralize

The intransitive usage of this verb is not so common and more so stilted for the written language; however, its transitive usage is very common in both the spoken and written languages.

43. 精神せいしんを集中しゅうちゅうして努力どりよくすればどんなことでも成なし遂とげられないことはない。

If you concentrate your mind and exert yourself, there isn't anything that you cannot accomplish.

44. 現在げんざいアクセスが集中しゅうちゅうしているため、投稿とうこうができません。

Unable to post due to a current heavy traffic spike.

45. ○○会長かいちょうに議員ぎいんらの質問しつもんが集中しゅうちゅうした。

Questions from the assemblymen converged on Chairman ##.

---

・減少する – To decrease/decline/reduce

This is a literary verb that is frequently also used in news reports. Its usually always used as an intransitive verb. In fact, even though its transitive usage is grammatically correct, it's unnatural to the majority of speakers nowadays. If you're compelled to use this verb in a transitive manner, the form 減少される is more natural, this is despite the fact that this could also mean “to make X decrease/reduce Y.”



46. メイン湾わんではタラの漁獲量ぎょかくりょうが減少げんしょうしている。  
In the Gulf of Main, cod hauls are declining.

**Spelling Note:** タラ may alternatively be spelled as 鱈.

47. 体重たいじゅうを {減へらす・減少げんしょうさせる・△減少げんしょうする} には、限界げんかいがある。

There is a limit to reducing weight.

---

・増加する – To increase

This verb is more common as an intransitive verb. When used as a transitive verb, some speakers opt to use 増加させる even though that can technically also be used as the verb's causative form. It is literary and is frequently used in news reports. It is “to increase” as in making the quantity of something larger.

48. 血液検査けつえきけんさの前まえに運動うんどうすることも白血球はっけっきゅうが増加ぞうかする原因げんいんの一ひとつです。

Exercising before blood work is also one reason for a rise in white blood cell count.

49. この回路かいろうの電流供給量でんりゅうきょうきゅうりょうを増加ぞうか {する・させる} ことができます。

It is possible to increase the current supply of this circuit.

---

・増殖する – To increase/propagate

This verb is typically used to mean “to propagate” as in organic matter. This could be procreation or the proliferation of cells. It may also refer to the increase of resources, especially assets, but this is not near as common. Although both its intransitive and transitive usages are common, as a transitive verb, it is often seen as 増殖させる. Because it is largely used in the realm of biology, the causative sense of making cells propagate, for instance, is very natural.

50. 患者自身かんじゃじしんの細胞さいぼうを増殖ぞうしょく {して・させて} 移植いしょくするという「再生医療さいせいりょう」が進すすんでいる。

“Regenerative medicine,” in which one propagates the cells of the patient himself and then transplant (said cells back into the patient), is advancing.

50. 癌細胞がんさいぼうは、徐々にじょじょに増殖ぞうしょくし、他たの組織そしきや臓器ぞうきに移転いてんしてしまうのです。

Cancer cells gradually propagate and then end up moving to other tissues and organs.

**Transitivity Note:** 移転する is another example and grammatically functions just like 移動する. 移転する can refer moving of placement/location or the transfer of legal rights whereas 移動する simply refers to the movement from one place to another.

---

・ 増大する – To enlarge/increase

This is a literary verb largely used in an intransitive sense that refers to the increase in degree, not quantity. When used as a transitive verb, if the agent has direct involvement in the action, 増大させる is preferred.

51. 医薬品いやくひんの支出ししゅつが増大ぞうだいしている。  
Medical supply expenditures are increasing.

52. 米国政府べいこくせいふはまたも防衛予算ぼうえいよさんを増大ぞうだいさせることを発表はっぴょうした。  
The U.S. government has again announced that they are to increase the defense budget.

53. 多おおくの国くにが科学技術かがくぎじゅつ（の）予算よさんを増大ぞうだいしている。  
Many countries are increasing their science and technology budgets.

---

・ 固定する – fixate/fix

This verb is common in both the spoken and written language. Its transitive usage is more common. When used as an intransitive verb, it is frequently seen as 固定される. This is less likely when referring to a fixed state in which no exertion was used to make it so.

54. レベルが上あがらず元もとのレベルに固定こてい {して・されて} しまうことがあります。  
There are times in which one level doesn't go up and one is fixed to one's original level.

55. 棚板たないたと支柱しちゅうを固定こていしているネジを外はずします。  
Remove the screws that fixate the shelf boards and props together.

**Spelling Note:** ネジ may alternatively be spelled as ねじ, 捩子, 螺子, 螺旋, or 捻子.

---

・ 再生する – To resuscitate/playback/etc.

As an intransitive verb, 再生する typically refers to something restoring back to life. This can be used in a figurative sense. It may also refer to reformation of a person as well. It may also be used to refer to regeneration. This usage can be both intransitive and transitive. As a transitive verb, it can also mean to “play (back)” as in video footage. When its meanings revolving regeneration, which includes playing back sound, is used in an intransitive fashion, it's typically seen as 再生される. Lastly, this verb is used in both the spoken and the written language.

56. パワーポイントで動画どうがを再生さいせいしたいです。  
I want to play a video on PowerPoint.

57. Wi-Fi環境かんきょうが不安定ふあんていな場合ばあい、映像えいぞうが再生さいせいされないことがあります。

Whenever your Wi-Fi environment is unstable, footage may not play.

58. 再生遺伝子さいせいいでんしを起動きどうさせる因子いんしを発見はっけんし、それをマウスまうすに移植いしょくされたところ、マウスまうすの組織そしきが再生さいせいされたそうです。

I hear that they've discovered the factor that activates the gene for regeneration, and upon having it transplanting in a mouse, the mouse's tissue was regenerated.

59. 失うしなった部位ぶいを再生さいせいする遺伝子いでんしが存在そんざいする。  
Genes for regeneration lost body parts exist.

60. カニの足あしは何度なんども再生さいせいするって本当ほんとうですか。  
Is it really true that crab legs regenerate many times over?

**Spelling Note:** カニ may also be spelled as 蟹.

---

・ 開始する – To begin/start

This is the literary version of 始まる and 始める. It is more formal and used extensively in news reports. Some speakers use 開始される instead when used in the intransitive sense. Although this technically implicitly hints at the agent, this is not always the case.

61. 平成へいせい28にじゅうはち年ねん1いち月がつから、マイナンバー制度せいどが開始かいしました。

The "My Number" system started in January 2016.

62. これらは全て来月から開始されます。  
These will all be started next month.

63. 5ご月がつより皮膚科ひふかの診察しんさつを開始かいします。  
We will begin dermatology examinations starting in May.

---

・ 反転する – To Roll Over/Turn Around

This verb means "to roll over/turn around" and is appropriate in both the written and the spoken language. When used transitively, some people prefer to use 反転させる, but this is also the verb's causative form. Sometimes, using this incidentally personifies non-living agents like in Ex. 64.

64. 強つよい台風たいふう○まる号ごうは15じゅうご日にち、暴風域ぼうふういきを伴ともないながら、沖縄おきなわ・南大東島みなみだいとうじまの南みなみで進路しんろを北東ほくとうに反転はんてん {した・させた}。

On the fifteenth, the strong Typhoon #? turned its course around northeast to the south of Minamidaito Island of Okinawa along with its storm area.

65. アメリカに住すむアフリカ系けいアメリカ人じん50ごじゅう人にと、南みなみアフリカ人じん50ごじゅう人への食生活しょくせいかつをそっくり入れ替かえてみたところ、2に週間しゅうかんで腸内ちょうないフローラが反転はんてんし、アメリカ人じんの腸内ちょうないフローラは南みなみアフリカ人じんと同おなじ特徴とくちょうを表あらわすようになり、南みなみアフリカ人じんの腸内ちょうないは大腸癌だいちょうがんの発症はっしょうリスクが高たかくなることが分かりました。

After precisely switching the dietary habits of 50 Americans of African descent living in America and 50 South Africans with each other, it was discovered that their intestinal flora (of the two groups) reversed in two weeks; the intestinal flora of the Americans expressed the same characteristics as the South Africans, and the risk of developing colorectal cancer in the intestines of the South Africans rose.

---

・ 停止する – To Suspend

This is a slightly more literary version of 止まる and 止める meaning "to halt/cease/suspend/interrupt/ban." The suspension/hang-up in question is not necessarily permanent.

66. 移動が停止してしまい、ミスに繋がることがありました。  
Movement would halt, which sometimes led to mistakes.

67. 東京都は、卸売業者3社に対して、最大20日間、業務を停止するよう命じました。  
Tokyo has ordered the suspension of operations for a maximum of twenty days to three wholesalers.

**第240課: Limit: ～限り, ～を限りに, ～限りでは, ～に限って, ～に限らない, & ～とは限らない**

限り is a rather complicated noun. Although it means "limit" and understanding it is no problem for most students, similar looking structures with it cause problems.

## 限り

～かぎり shows up in a lot of expressions, but what comes before it must be taken into account. Although particles may be a pain to get used to, you should still love them.

---

1. ～かぎり: This shows a parameter of a certain condition. Before ～かぎり, you may see nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

1. 保証ほしょうの限りではない。  
It is not in the warranty.

2. 目の届とどく限り、晴れ渡わたっている。  
The sky is clear as far as the eye can see.

3. 可能な限り、薬を飲まないようにしています。

I'm trying as best I can to not take the medicine.

4. できる限りのことをするのも無理なのだ。

Doing as much as possible is also no good.

5. 法律ほうりつの及およぶ限り厳密げんみつに処しょすべきだ。

It should be strictly dealt with to the full extent of the law.

6. 今年も能力の限り、お役に立てるよう働くことを誓ちかいます。

I vow to work to be of benefit [to X] to the best of my ability this year as well.

7. 外は豪雪ごうせつでも、部屋のなかにいるかぎりには真夏日まなつびのようだ。

Even if there is heavy snowfall outside, for as long as you're inside the room, it's like a hot summer day.

---

### 読み物: A Passage from 心 by 夏目漱石

8. 次の日私は先生の後あとにつづいて海へ飛び込こんだ。そうして先生といっしょの方角ほうがくに泳いで行った。二丁ちょうほど沖おきへ出ると、先生は後ろを振り返って私に話し掛かけた。広い蒼あおい海の表面に浮ういているものは、その近所に私ら二人より外ほかになかった。そうして強い太陽の光が、眼めの届く限り水と山とを照らしていた。私は自由と歓喜かんきに充みちた筋肉を動かして海の中で躍おどり狂くるった。先生はまたばかりと手足の運動を已やめて仰向あおもむけになったまま浪なみの上に寝た。私もその真似まねをした。青空の色がぎらぎらと眼を射いるように痛烈つうれつな色を私の顔に投なげ付つけた。「愉快ゆかいですね」と私は大きな声を出した。

#### 漢字 Notes:

1. 蒼い is a very literary spelling for blue. And, you may also encounter 碧い in similar contexts. 蒼い is a rather dull "blue", and it is often used in contexts where one "is blue in the face". 碧い is used when "blue" may have anywhere from a light to dark green hue to it.

2. ～掛ける is usually spelled as ～かける in everyday writing.

3. Rather than using 満ちる, 充ちる has the added nuance of inundation. 満ちる is over all the most important spelling due to the fact that 充 does not have the reading み(ちる) listed in the 常用漢字表.

4. 躍る differs from 踊る in the sense that the latter is "dance" in a rhythmic sense whereas the former is just jumping up and down.

5. 已む specifically describes a phenomenon, action, or condition that has continued for some time stopping completely. It is generally replaced with 止む except in literal situations like this when the writer wishes to make this nuance clear.

6. 浪 specifically refers to ripples in water or water rising up.

The next day, I followed Sensei into the ocean. I then swam in the same direction as him. After going over a hundred meters offshore, Sensei turned around to talk to me. It was only us floating atop the surface of the wide, blue sea. The strong sunlight made the water and mountains glow for as far

as one could see. I madly danced around in the waves with my muscles full of joy and freedom. Sensei, again, suddenly froze his arms and legs and lay flat on his back asleep on the waves, and so I mimicked him. The blue sky cast a scathing light into my eyes as if to pierce them out. "How pleasant!", I yelled out.

Questions:

1. Find an example where a Japanese item is naturalized for the English translation.
  2. Why might liberties in translation be needed with this passage?
- 

～ない限り, which is an application of above, can be translated as "until" in contexts like below.

9. 君が考えを改あらためないかぎり、うまくいかない。  
Until you rethink yourself, things won't go well.

10. あいつは、あまりにも疲れていないかぎり、夜遅くまでIMABIを編集へんしゅうするそうだ。  
That guy seems to edit IMABI up into the night unless he's too tired.

11. 汚水おすいを飲まないかぎり大丈夫ですよ。  
So long as you don't drink filthy water, you should be fine.

After adjectives at the end of a sentence, ～かぎりだ shows the speaker's emotions with what is being said not being simply about the nature of things, but the matter at hand doesn't extend beyond a certain limit.

12. 誰からも連絡がなく、寂さびしいかぎりだ。  
It's just very lonely that I don't get contact from anyone.

Another thing that this form can do that the two below cannot is be followed with a volitional expression.

13. 生きている限り歌おう。  
I'll sing until I die.

As a suffix after temporal phrases in the form of ～かぎりで, it express deadline.

14. 来月末限りで辞任するつもりだ。  
I plan to resign at the end of next month.
- 

2. ～を限りに, when used with time phrases, explicitly states when will be the last time that one does something. With non-temporal phrases, it shows some sort of physical limitation.

15. 彼は声の限りに叫さけんだ。  
He screamed to the top of his lungs.

16. 今日を限りに酒は飲みません。

I will not drink alcohol from this day forward!

17. これを限りにお前とは縁えんを切る。

From here on I break my ties with you.

18. 今年の年末を限りに期限が切れる。

The term/period/deadline will expire at the end of this year.

---

3. ～限りでは: Verbs of cognition such as 知る, 見る, 聞く, 読む, etc. come before, and the following clause deals with a judgment. In totality, this construction means "as far as...".

19. 知られる限りでは依然行方不明いぜんゆくえふめい。 (Headline)

[X] is/are still missing as far as is known.

20. 私の知っている限りでは、彼はそんなことをする人ではありません。

As far as I know, he is not the kind of person to do something like that.

---

4. ～に限って: This raises a time, person, or thing to mean "insofar/unless". This is used a lot with とき.

21. あたしが出かけるときにかぎって、雨が降るのよ。(女性語)

It doesn't rain unless I go out [somewhere].

22. 我わが社しゃの社員に限って、そのような不正はするはずがない。

Insofar as our company's workers, we have no reason to do such illegality.

23. 読みたいときに限って、アクセスできない。

I can't access it insofar as to when I want to read it.

As one would expect, this phrase has a negative form, ～に限らない. This means that something is not yet decided. Of course, in formal/written situations, you can see it as ～に限らず.

24. 怠なまけたがるのは、子供に限ったことじゃない。

Wanting to slack off is not limited to just kids.

25. 対象はアメリカ人に限りません。

Our target is not limited to Americans.

26. 韓国語を勉強している学生は、東アジア専攻に限りません。

Students who study Korean are not limited to East Asian majors.

---

5. ～とは限らない may resemble ～に限らない, and the best of students mix them up. However, because of the particle と, no part of speech limitations exists. ～とは限らない means "not necessarily". This phrase is frequently used to speak against stereotypes.

27. 日本人がみんな勉強ばかりしているとは限らない。

It's not necessarily the case that all Japanese people do nothing but study.

28. アメリカ人は、必ずしも日本人より背が高いとは限らない。

Americans are not necessarily taller than Japanese people.

29. テキサスの人がみんな必ずバーベキューばかり食べるとは限らない。

All Texans don't necessarily eat just barbecue.

30. 念ねんを入れたからっていい仕上しあがりになるとは限らない。

Because we paid attention to detail, it's (now) a good finish.

**第241課: Addition:** ～に加えて, ～にとどまらず, ～もさることながら, ～はおろか, ～はもちろん, ～はもとより, ～ともあれ

In this lesson we will learn about somewhat negative speech modals of end result.

## ～に加えて

加える means anything related to "to add". So, ～に加えて means "in addition to". It is used a lot in enumerating negative situations.

1. 子供は指を銜くわえる嫌いがある。

Children have the tendency to have their fingers in their mouth.

**Orthography Note:** 銜 is rare. If anything, it would be replaced by 咥, but it's highly unlikely that you will see the word written in 漢字.

2. 彼女は日本語に加えて、英語もあまり分からないみたいね。

In addition to Japanese, it looks like she barely understands English.

3. 料理に胡椒こしょうは一つまみも加える必要はない。

It's not necessary to add a pinch of pepper to a dish.

4. お茶に砂糖を加える。

To mix sugar in the tea.

5. イギリスに加えて、フランスもドイツも多文化主義の非を鳴らしています。

In addition to England, France and Germany are also denouncing multiculturalism.

7. 圧力を加える。

To put pressure on.

8. そのことに加えて、彼は自分の名前を忘れたよ！

In addition to that, he also forgot his own name!

9. 5日のニューヨーク株式市場かぶしきしじょうは、東京市場で株価が大幅おおはばに値下がりしたことに**加えて**、アメリカが景気を下支したざさえするために行っている



量的緩和りょうてきかんわの縮小しゅくしょう時期など、アメリカの金融きんゆう政策に対する不安から幅広い銘柄めいがらに売り注文が広がりました。

As for the New York Stock Exchange on the fifth, selling orders have spread in a wide range of brands from worries towards American financial policies such as the quantitative easing curtailment period America is carrying out in order to backup the economy in addition to the large drop in prices due to the Tokyo Exchange.

From NHK.

## ～にとどまらず

This speech modal means that X does not stop in a certain parameter, but extends farther. This pattern can be seen after nouns and the 終止形 of verbs. It comes after a phrase that shows a phenomenon or extent that is limited in some way, and then it is followed by a phrase with a larger scale implied or explicitly stated. This phrase should not be used with static expressions.

10. マスメディアによる情報というものは、今や一国にとどまらず、世界中に伝わる。

Information by the media doesn't stay in one country now; it travels the world.

11. 農作物は、台風に襲われた直後にとどまらず、一年中その影響を受ける。

Crops don't just receive the effects directly after being hit by a typhoon; they feel the impact throughout the year.

12. 一人の人間の明るさは、場を明るくするにとどまらず、周囲の人々に心身の活力をも与える。

The brightness of a person not only brightens up the area, but also it gives energy to the hearts and minds of the surrounding people.

13. 彼女は成功にとどまらず、社会貢献に尽力した。

She not only stopped at success, but she also labored as a contribution to society.

14. 更に執刀した岡山大学病院の大藤剛宏医師は手術後の記者会見で「中葉を使った移植は男の子1人を助けるにとどまらず、これまで助けることができなかった子どもたちに光が当たるという意義がある」と話しました。

In addition, Dr. Oto Takahiro of Okayama University Hospital who did the surgery in a press conference afterwards said that "the transplant using the middle lobe [of the lung] doesn't just save this one boy, but it gives light to other children that have not been able to be helped till now".

From the NHK article 生体肺移植の男児 容体安定 by 2013年7月2日 4時15分.

## ～もさることながら

～もさることながら gives a meaning that something is so, but in addition, something else needs to be emphasized. Thus, it is equivalent to, "it goes without saying that...". It is used after nouns.

15. 中華料理ちゅうかりょうりは味あじもさることながら、健康けんこうにいいですよ。

It goes without saying that Chinese food is tasty, but it's also good for you.

16. 彼女は人柄もさることながら、その頭の働きの良さで周囲の人をぐいぐいと引っ張っていく。

Her personality goes with saying, and her great mind pulls those around her [towards her].

## ～おろか・もちろん・もとより

～はおろか・もちろん・もとより, mean "not to mention", "much less", or "let alone" and are placed after a sentence fragment.

17. 彼女は料理はもとより食器も洗う。

She not only cooks, but she also washes the dishes.

18. 一ドルはおろか一セントも持ってないよ。

I don't have a cent, let alone a dollar!

19. 彼は英語はもとより、スペイン語も韓国語もできます。

Not to mention English, he can also speak Spanish and Korean.

20. 彼は英語はもちろん、スペイン語も韓国語もできます。

Not to mention English, he can also speak Spanish and Korean.

21. 低賃金、劣悪な労働条件、一方的な首切りなどの経済・労働問題はもとより、各種の人的問題までも引き起こしている。

They are not only suffering from low wages, cases of poor working condition, and economic and labor problems such as one-sided layoffs, they are also troubled to the extent of various forms of discrimination.

22. あの子は書くのはもちろん、読むこともできない。

That kid can't even read, let alone write.

23. 地方ごとに、味はもとより、料理の仕方も違ってきますね。

With each region, not to mention flavor, but even cooking methods differ, don't they?

24. 父はおろか、僕の犬でさえ反対したようだ。

Not to mention my father, even my dog seemed to object.

25. 私はバイオリンはおろか、ギターも弾けない。

I can't even play the guitar, much less a violet.

26. 母語はもちろん、彼は七つの他の言語も話せます。

Not only his native language, but he can also speak seven other languages.

27. 彼女は話すのはおろか、足も動かさません。

She can't even move her legs, let alone speak.

28. 彼は修士を得るのはもちろん、入学さえできない。

He can't even enter college, let alone receive a master's degree.

**Word Notes:** もちろん may be translated as "not only...but also..." and may be an interjection meaning "of course" when by itself. もとより may be written as 元より, 固より, or 素より.

### ～ともあれ

～ともあれ is an adverbial phrase that means "never mind/putting aside". It is also seen in 何はともあれ meaning "in any case".

29. 中国語はともあれ、問題は日本語の勉強だぞ。

Never mind Chinese, the problem is my Japanese studies!

30. 何はともあれ、後でしょう。

In any case, let's do it later.

## 第242課: The Particle と III: と + ...～ない

We will look at yet another use of the case particle と. This one is quite different than all the other usages we've looked at as it behaves more like an adverb than any of the other case particles. So, keep this in mind.

### と + ...～ない

と may strengthen negative expressions used with counter expressions and some other adverbs. It is especially common in the phrase 二度と. This usage stresses that things aren't going to be so. Although this usage is classified as a case particle usage, it's easy to view it as an adverbial particle as it is always paired with adverbial phrases (counters).

1. もう二度とあんなところへ行かない。

I'm not going to go to a place like that ever again.

2. 3分ぶんとかからない。

It won't take more than 3 minutes.

3. 命いのちは二つとない。

Life is but once.

4. 生なまものは3日ともたない。

Raw foods won't last three days.

5. 一分と待てない。

I can't even wait one minute.

6. 平穏へいおんは3日ともたない。

Tranquility won't last but three days.

7. 色んな治療ちりょうを受けても1週間ともたない。  
No matter what various treatment (I) receive, it lasts but a week.
8. 時間は一秒とかからない。  
Not even a second will go by.
9. この数学問題を解くのに5分とかからなかった。  
It didn't take more than five minutes to solve this math problem.
10. この食料しょくりょうでは1日ともたない。  
We won't even make it a day with this food.
11. この食料は1日ともたない。  
This food won't make it a day.
12. 同じものは二つとない。  
There isn't a same thing twice.
13. これは世界に2個もないものですね。  
There is only one in the world.
14. 雲一つとない青空を見上げる。  
To look up at the blue sky with not a single cloud.
15. ニヶ月5000円とかからなかった。  
It didn't even cost more than ¥5000 for two months.
16. 下痢げりが出るまで1分と我慢がまんできない。  
I can't even hold it one minute till diarrhea comes out.
17. こんな機会はまたとない。  
Such an opportunity won't come again.
18. 大失敗は二度と繰り返しません。  
Great failure won't repeat once more.
19. だめだ、何をやっても2日と続かない。  
It's useless, I can't keep going at something for two days no matter what I do.
20. この問題は手計算だと10分かかるが、パソコンに解かせれば1秒とかからない。  
This problem by hand takes 10 minutes, but if you get it solved by computer, it doesn't even take a second.

---

### も VS と

This is very similar to the particle も, but the particle も emphasizes the greatness of something and can either be used with positive or negative sentences. This is in stark difference with this usage of と which often emphasizes the smallness and often showing intolerance about things. For instance, in 22, the speaker, despite 1 hour being reasonably short for the situation, is not wanting to be patient anymore.

21. 一時間も待った。  
I waited at least one hour.
22. もう一分と待たない。  
I won't even wait a minute.
23. 税金を一円と払わない！  
I won't pay even a yen in taxes!
24. 税金を10万円も払えない。  
I can't even pay ¥100,000 in taxes.

25a. 誰ひとりと知らない。  
25b. 誰ひととも知らない。  
Not a single person knows.  
No one knows.

25a stresses the smallness of the quantity that one/someone either doesn't know more than essentially no one or that no one doesn't know something. 25b is the same but makes a big deal about the situation and is consequently more common than 25a. Say no one knows your new address, if you used 25a in the dialogue, you're just stating that no one knows, but if you say 25b, you're making an issue out of things and emphasizing the situation as a problem.

## 第183課: The Particle しも

This particle is very limited in use, but it is not that difficult.

### The Adverbial Particle しも

しも is essentially an emphatic し. However, its use in a sentence reflects a more productive use of し itself. Though we often see し in the spoken language today, the particle has existed for a long time, and the combination of the emphatic し and emphatic も has been around just as long. Although しも has survived along with し, its usage is primarily restricted to the following phrases. Notice how it is designated to nominal (or nominalized) phrases or after adverbial phrases.

Aside from the last phrase 折しも, all of these phrases are used in negative sentences. This just goes to show you how many restrictions are on its use, and it's no surprise that most of these phrases are most frequently used in 書き言葉.

誰しも	Everyone, anyone (very emphatic)	～ならまだしも	It's one thing, but...
必ずしも	Not necessarily	～なきにしもあらず	It's not to say that...won't
折しも	Just then		

**Phrase Note:** 必かならずしも is often paired with ～とは限かぎらない ending the sentence.

**Speech Style Note:** ～なきにしもあらず and 折しも are especially 書き言葉.

**Variant Note:** A rarer variant of 折しも is 時しも. This essentially does not show up in Modern Japanese works, but it does show up sometimes in Early Modern Japanese works. Meaning wise, 折 and 時 mean the same thing here.

1. 誰しも地獄じごくへ落おちるのは怖こわい。

Everyone is afraid of going to hell.

2. 勢力せいりょくはそれ自体じたいでは必ずしも幸福こうふくをもたらすとは限らない。

Power, in itself, doesn't necessarily bring happiness.

3. 折しも、地震が起きました。

Just at that time, the earthquake occurred.

4. 折しも、雪崩が発生し、登山者の二人は行方不明となった。依然として行方不明のままである。

Just then, the avalanche was sparked, and the two mountain climbers went missing. They are still to this moment unaccounted for.

---

### ～ならまだしも

This phrase can be used after nouns, verbs, and adjectives. For verbs and adjectives, you attach it to the 終止形. For 形容動詞, simply add after the stem.

5. 1日か2つかならまだしも、10日も無断欠勤だなんて、許されないものだし、非常識だ。

It's one thing to be 1 or 2 days, but an over ten day unexcused leave is intolerable and against common sense.

6. 新鮮ならまだしも、変色して黒ずんでいる果物を誰が買うものなのか。

Being fresh is one thing, but who would ever buy fruit that's discolored and black?

7. 日本語ならまだしも、英語えいごなんて全く全然分からないよ。

Japanese is one thing, but I absolutely don't understand English at all!

8. 寒いだけならまだしも、お腹が空いてきた。

If it were just cold, that would be one thing, but I've gotten hungry.

9. 事情を説明しに来るならまだしも、顔さえ見せない。

Coming to explain the situation is one thing, but (he) won't even show his face.

10. 一度ならまだしも、ここまで10回までその言葉を間違えて書いたんですよ。  
Once is fine, but you've written the word incorrectly ten times now.
11. まだしも死んだ方が良い。  
It would be best to just die.

---

### ～なきにしもあらず

This is a double negative phrase which functions as a positive expression, and it ultimately has the meaning of 有り得る. Although it is a predicate phrase, it is still followed by the copula. Remember that しも is here to show emphasis (強調). It is seldom used in the spoken language, but it can still show up.

12. あの子はまだ望のぞみはなきにしもあらずだ。  
It's not to say that the kid doesn't have (any) hope.
13. 台風が接近しているので、雨が降る事もなきにしもあらずなので、傘をお忘れなく。  
The typhoon is approaching, so don't forget your umbrella because it's not like it couldn't rain.
14. 急にカメラが壊れることもなきにしもあらずですよ。  
It's not to say that your camera won't suddenly break down.
15. 後数分で事故などで死ぬ事もなきにしもあらずだからだ。  
That's because it's not the case that you won't die in an accident or something a few minutes later.

---

### With Other Particles?

16. 男たちは縁側で将棋に興じている。街路樹のプラタナスの葉ずれ。ああいうのをしも、人間の文化といわずして、何というのだろう。  
The men are amusing themselves with shogi on the veranda while plane trees rustle on the sides of the road. What would you call this if not human culture?  
By 田辺聖子 in 古川柳おちぼひろい.

**Grammar Note:** The particle しも used to be more versatile in the past. In the example above, the particle is used after を. This is very rare now, but it is not ungrammatical.

### 必ず VS きっと VS 絶対ぜったい(に)

So, given that you have now seen these three similar words for quite a while, you're probably wondering how they're different. There is overlap. So, focus not only on the differences but also the commonalities.

## きっと:

- Based on observation, the probability of something happening is high. It may show strong determination or show strong will towards the listener(s). It is like "surely". It may be seen at the beginning, middle, or at the end of a sentence.
- It can also mean "certainly", synonymous with 確たしかに and 疑うたがいなく. Therefore it isn't used in a question. In a command it is like "without fail", just like 必ず.
- きっと...する = "to be sure to..."
- きっと...だ = "have to be"
- きっと...に違ちがいない = "must be..."

It can also show sternness.

## 必ず:

- Without a doubt, something will be done or happen. It is far more firm. Probability is 100%. It is like "always", and in meaning so it makes a general noun the subject.
- It can mean "surely" just like きっと and be seen in the same locations in the sentence.
- 必ずや is an even more emphatic form.
- "Necessarily" as in something is inevitable, interchangeable with 必然的 ひつぜんてきに.
- In a command, it means "by all means/without fail".
- Some commands with the pattern 必ず...する may mean "be sure to/make certain".
- 必ずしも～ない completely negates something and is equivalent to 絶対そう...とは限らない.
- 必ず is much more serious than きっと despite that they're used in similar environments.

## 絶対 (に) :

- No matter what
- Positively/definitely
- With the negative it means "never".
- It is often used with phrases that mean "must", "will" and "would" to be similar to "on not account", clearly in a negative sentence.
- Unlike the others, it is more constructive and can be used as a noun and used as an attribute as 絶対の・絶対的ぜったいてきな to mean "absolute/indispensable".

Some of these things feature grammar points that we haven't studied yet, but you should know the overall usage of these three words.

17. 絶対に確信かくしんがあります。  
I'm absolutely sure.



18. 絶対にそうだ。  
There's no doubt about it.
19. 絶対零度を測定する  
To record absolute zero
20. 彼女は必ずしも忙しくない。  
She's not always busy.
21. 戦争は必ず起こる。  
War will inevitably occur.
22. 必ず約束やくそくを守もってください。  
Do not fail to keep your word/promise.
23. 明日中にはきっと伺うかがいます。  
I will certainly come sometime tomorrow.
24. 絶対的な権力けんりょくを握る。  
To grab absolute power
25. 僕らはきっと勝つ。  
We will surely win.
26. きっとだ、間違まちがいない。  
I'll be bound.
27. それは絶対だめだよ。  
That'll never do.
28. そんなことを絶対にしてはいけません。  
You must never do something like that.

## 第243課: The Volitional II: The Negative Volitional: ～まい

Just when you thought you were done, you now have to consider negative volition.

### ～まい

～まい shows **negative volition**. So, you have will for **something not to happen**. It may also be like ～ないだろう. The first meaning would be used in contexts like "I won't..." or "She vowed not to go". This can be distinguished from other contexts such as "it won't possibly rain".

～まい attaches to the 終止形 of 五段 verbs and auxiliary verbs, which includes ～ます. As for 一段 verbs and する and 来る, it attaches to the 未然形 or 終止形. However, the 未然形 is better.

一段    食べる + まい →      食べまい  
   食べるまい (△)

五段	書く + まい →	書くまい
～ます	書きます + まい →	書きますまい
		しまい (打ち消し意志)
する	する + まい →	するまい (普通, 打ち消し推量)
		すまい (ちょっとかしこまった)
来る	来る + まい →	来まい
		来るまい

## Grammar Notes:

1. It's possible to see すまい when it is treated as a 五段 verb like with 愛す.
2. It is also common in casual speech and *some dialects* to see よ inserted between the 未然形 and ～まい. For example, いようがいよまいが.

## Examples

- 1a. 雪が降るまい。
- 1b. おそらく雪は降らないだろう。 (Natural)  
It probably won't snow.
- 2a. 勝てまい。
- 2b. 勝てないだろう。 (Natural)  
I doubt you'll win.
- 3a. あの男は負けるまい。
- 3b. あの男は負けないだろう。 (Natural)  
That man will probably not lose.
4. それは大たいした金にはなるまい。  
That probably won't be worth much money.
- 5a. 害がいにはなりますまい。
- 5b. 害にはならないでしょう。 (Natural)  
It'll do you no harm.
- 6a. ペンギンは助かるまい。
- 6b. ペンギンは助からないだろう。 (Natural)  
The penguins probably won't be saved.
7. 誰も信じまい。  
No one will probably believe it.
- 8a. そんな手段は認めますまい。
- 8b. そんな手段は認められませんよ。 (Natural)  
I will not approve of such a method.
9. もう二度とそんな過あやまちは繰くり返すまい！  
I will not make such a mistake a second time!

10. 明日、行くのをやめよう。

Let's not go tomorrow.

11. 絶対に落第らくだいするまいぞ！

I will absolutely not fail!

12. もう言うまい！

I'll say no more!

13. いくら肉親の妹だって、姉の骨まで見たことはあるまいから、分かるもんか。

Even if it was your own little sister, you'd never understand since you've surely never seen bones to that of your older sister.

From 死体紹介人 by 川端康成.

14. 「里子ちゃん、いらっしゃい。お雑煮のお餅を焼きましょうね。里子ちゃんも、お手つだいしてちょうだい。」などと言って、菊子は里子を台所へ呼び寄せ、信吾の寝部屋の廊下を走らせまいとするつもりらしいが、里子は聞く風もなく、ぺたぺた廊下を走りつづけた。

Kikuko said something like "Satoko-chan, come here. Let's make some zoni mochi. Won't you please help?" to call Satoko to the kitchen, and although it seemed she meant on not having her run through the hall by Shingo's bedroom, Satoko paid no heed to this and continued to run down loudly through the hall.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

---

### ～まいとする

～まいとする means "to try not to". It is normally replaced by ～ないようにする. This paraphrase can also work for when する is not the verb phrase, but in this case, because using ～まい is a little more common in the spoken language, such a paraphrase is not necessary.

15. 笑うまいとする。

To try not to laugh.

16. 笑うまいとしてもつい笑ってしまうだろう。

Even if you try not to laugh, you'll eventually end up laughing.

17. 負けるまいとする。

To try not to lose.

18. 会うまいと決心した。

I decided that I wasn't going to meet (him).

19. その時までは決して彼に会うまいと心に決めていた。

Until that time, I decided in my heart not to meet him by all means.

20. 彼女は眠るまいと決心していたが、結局眠りにつけてしまった。  
She was resolute not to sleep, but she finally ended up falling asleep.
- 

### ～ではあるまい

～ではあるまい shows inadequacy. ～というわけではない is now common-place.  
～ではあるまいし means "it's not as if...".

21. 知らなかったわけではあるまい。  
It's not that they didn't know.
22. 馬鹿じゃあるまいし、そんなことをするな。  
It's not as if you're an idiot, so don't do that.
- 

### Volition + が・と + Negative Volition + が・と

～(よ)うが～まいが and ～(よ)うと～まいと mean "whether...or...".

23. 真実であろうが真実であるまいが、まだ関係はない。  
Whether it's true or it's not true, I still have no part in it.
24. 行こうと行くまいと僕の勝ちだ。  
Even if you go or don't go, it's my victory.
25. 人が来ようと来るまいとまだパーティーを開ひらく。  
Whether people come or not, I'm still going to throw a party.
- 

### ～まいぞ

～まいぞ shows prohibition. Although ～ますまい exists, ～ますまいぞ does not. This expression is quite old-fashioned, so you may only hear old men say this or find it in literature. Tone would distinguish it from a negative volitional statement like above.

26. 行くまいぞ。  
You mustn't go.
- 

### ～まじき

～まい comes from the Classical Japanese ending ～まじ (the negative equivalent of ～べし). ～まじ only attached to the 終止形, except when it was attached to the verb あり (ある). For あり, it followed its 連体形, ある.

あるまじき happens to be retained in Modern Japanese in more literary/formal situations to mean "not proper to". ～まじき can also be found in other set expressions.

27. あるまじき行為だ。  
It is an improper act.

28. すまじきものは宮仕みやづかえ。(Set Phrase)

It is better to work for oneself than to work for someone else.

～まじ had every base except the 命令形. This is in stark contrast with the Modern Japanese ～まい, which only has a 終止形 and a very rarely used 連体形 (～まい). However, two older 連体形 still hold on. The original ～まじき can still be seen in set phrases, but in the early 1900s, the form ～まじい was still frequently used in literature.

29. 「早くね、早くね。」と、言うなり後向いて走り出したのは嘘うそみたいにあっけなかったが、遠ざかる後姿を見送っていると、なぜまたあの娘はいつもああ真剣しんな様子なのだろうと、この場にあるまじい不審ふしんが島村の心を掠かすめた。

Her running off as soon as she looked back saying "hurry, hurry!" seemed all too easy like a lie, but as he looked at her retreating figure go farther away, a suspicion unfit for the scene grazed Shimamura's mind as he thought on why again she was always seemed so serious like that.

From 雪国 by 川端康成。

30. 士官しかんの軍刀と、半玉はんぎょくの守り袋や花簪はなかんざしの鈴とが、足拍子あしびょうしにつれて鳴った。兵士にあるまじい、哀傷あいしょうの歌詞でありながら、二十五前後の青年と十五六の少女との合唱がっしょうであるために、進軍の歌の響きがあった。

The officer's saber and the young geisha's little pouch and bells on her flowery hairpin rang along with the beating of their feet. While the lyrics were elegiac and unworthy for a soldier, there was a marching song sound for the lad around twenty five or six and the young fifteen or sixteen girl to sing in chorus to. From 童謡 by 川端康成.

31. 触れるほど顔を重ねて見るほど、能面にはあるまじい邪道だろう。

It was surely heresy unworthy of the Noh mask to even touch or try to put over one's face.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

**Tense Note:** Sentences with ～まい are always in the non-past tense because ～まじ indicates that something should or won't happen due to some experience.

**第244課: As soon as: ～や(いなや), ～なり, ～途端(に), ～かと思うと, & ～次第**

Though "as" itself is hard enough in Japanese, Japanese also has a lot of expressions that mean "as soon as". This lesson will investigate how to use these expressions. Take close attention to what defines them as there are differences!

**～や否や & ～や**

Placed after the 終止形しゅうしけい of a verb in ～や or ～や否いなや, it means "as soon as". With 否や, it is like the second action takes place before the

first action can even be confirmed or done. The most used is や否や. In fact, や否や will be used 90% of the time.

1. 地震じしんが発生はっせいするやいなや、気象庁きしょうちょうは直ただちに津波警報つなみけいほうを出しました。

As soon as the earthquake happened, the Meteorological Agency issued a tsunami warning.

2. 姉の顔を見るやいなや、泣き出した。

I began weeping as soon as I saw my sister's face.

3a. その選手はチャンスと見るや、一気に {攻め込んだ・攻撃をしかけた}。

3b. その選手はチャンスと見るやいなや、一気に {攻め込んだ・攻撃をしかけた}。

(あまり使わない言い方)

The player felt a chance open and attacked in one burst.

4. 出発しゅっぱつするやいなや雨が降ふり出した。

It started to rain as soon as I departed.

～やいなや cannot be used to show the speaker's wants or intentions. Also, don't use the past tense before ～やいなや. The action can be something that you can expect. It's important to understand that the events of the second clause are actions/movements.

5. うちの猫は魚が大好きで、あげるやいなや、一気に全部食べてしまう。

My cat loves fish, and the instant you give it to it, it's gone in an instant.

## The Conjunctive Particle なり

After the 連体形 of a verb, ～なり shows that something is done as soon as something else is done. So right when someone does something, they do something next in sequence to the first action. The subject is normally third person, and the subject is the same in both clauses.

6a. 宿題を済ませるなり、彼らはインターネットを使った。

6b. 宿題を済ませるとすぐに、彼らはインターネットを使った。(More natural)

They used the Internet as soon as they finished their homework.

7. 彼は帰るなり、トイレに行った。

He went to the bathroom as soon as he got home.

8. 社長は入ってくるなり、大声で怒鳴りました。

As soon as the company president came in, he shouted in a big voice.

The word comes from the なり in words like 身なり (appearance). The event in the second clause is often one that describes an action/condition not wanted. Although it is used some in the spoken language, it is usually reserved to writing.

After the past tense, it shows a situation that is still in play as another action begins. It is unnatural when you move in any way to a different action.

9. 彼は靴を履いたなり、畳に上がってしまった。 △

彼は靴を履いたまま、畳に上がってしまった。 ○

He accidentally stepped onto the tatami mat with his shoes still.

10. 彼女は公園でベンチに座り込んだ {なり・まま}、眠ってしまった。

She fell asleep while sitting on a park bench.

### ～途端（に）

When students learn of 途端に, they immediately think of ～ときに, especially when they learn that this phrase is used after the past tense.

Understandable, ～たとき（に） and ～たとたん（に） vaguely resemble each other, especially when not written in 漢字.

～た途端とたん（に） is, again, only used with the past tense. It marks the instant after one does something. This “something” that happens afterward is something that is **unexpected** and much of a surprise.

11. 彼がドアを開けた途端、車が爆発した。

The car exploded just as he opened the door.

12. 窓まどを開けた途端に、犬が飛び出していった。

As soon as I opened the window, the dog jumped out.

13. 立ち去さった途端に、その建物たてものが爆発ばくはつしたよ！

As soon as he left, the building exploded!

14. 動画どうがを観みた途端に、眠ねむくなってしまった。

I accidentally fell asleep as soon as I saw the video.

15. 余所見をした途端、転んだ。

I fell down as soon as I turned away.

16. 酒を飲むと、（その）途端に人が変わる。

Once a person drinks, that person changes instantly.

**Grammar Note:** 途端 may also be used in the sense of instantly and can be seen with such statements.

As seen in the example sentences, though, ～た途端（に） can't be used when something volitional occurs. So, although a situation may be unexpected, you would need to use a phrase like ～たら、すぐに if you are using a verb of volition.

17. ベルが鳴ったら、すぐに外に出てください。

When the bell rings, immediately go outside.

### ～かと思うと

Perhaps because it is rarely treated separately in grammar discussions, students have a hard time knowing how to use this phrase. This describes

something happening that causes a sense of surprise, similar to ～た途端（に）, which follows after an event described in the first clause. Transitivity, though, is clearly different as ～た途端（に） is used with transitive expressions, but this phrase does not have that requirement.

You cannot use this phrase for yourself. At times it may be best to use ～かと思ったら instead. Sentences of command, negation, or will appear afterwards. For some people, when the event is not of the future or going back and forth in a way that means the first action may happen again in the "future", then the use of ～かと思う is somewhat unnatural and should be replaced with ～かと思ったら. So, for the sentences below regarding weather, you can paraphrase with the latter and have no problem.

---

### Examples

18. 雨が降ってきたかと {思うと ?/○・思ったら ○}、もう止んだ。  
Just when I thought it had started to rain, it stopped.

19. 空が曇ってきたと {思うと ?/○・思ったら ○}、突然大雨になった。  
Just when I thought it got cloudy, it started to rain heavily.

20. 彼女はA君のことを好きだと言っていたかと思うと、次はB君が好きだと言い出し、何を考えているのかよく分からない。  
Just as I had thought she said she liked A-kun, she then stated that she liked B-kun, and so I don't know what she's thinking.

22. うちの子供は帰ってきたかと {思うと ?/○・思ったら ○}、もう外に遊びに行った。  
The kids had already gone to play outside just when I thought they had come home.

### ～次第

As a regular noun, 次第 means "course of events". It is seen after nouns a lot, especially Sino-Japanese words, but also after the 連用形 of verbs.

When it attaches to other nouns, it often means "depending on". As such, when after the 連用形 of a verb, it may show that something is dependent on an action in question.

23. 請求せいきゅうがあり次第だ。  
It's on demand.

24. 物事は状況次第。  
Circumstances alter cases.

25. こういう次第だ。  
This is how it stands.

26. 万事は君の（この）取り扱い方次第だ。  
It depends on the way you handle it.



27. 天気の様子次第で行くかどうか決めるんだ。

I'm going to decide on whether to go or not depending on the weather condition.

28. 大統領が決心するかどうかはそれ次第だ。

The president's resolution depends on this.

29. 豊作になるかどうかは天気次第です。

An abundant harvest is dependent on the weather.

30. 結果は君次第だ。

The results depend on you.

31. 昇進できるかどうかは能力次第だ。

Promotion is dependent on one's ability.

---

### 連用形 + 次第

It may also be used with the 連用形 of a verb to show what happens "as soon as...". This is in the sense that right after something realizes, one does the next action. Thus, the second clause following must be a verb of volition in regards to the speaker. This separates it quite well from the other "as soon as" phrases in this lesson.

32. 着き次第、被災地に援助します。

As soon as we arrive, we will aid in the disaster area.

33. 手当たり次第に食べ物を買占しめる。

To buy up food as it is made available.

34. 満員になり次第締め切ろう。

Let's close up as soon as we become a full house.

35. 我々は雪がやみ次第、作業を再び始めるつもりです。

We plan to resume operations as soon as it stops snowing.

---

### Adverbial 次第に

Lastly, 次第に is an adverb meaning "gradually", "finally", or "in order".

36. 機械は {次第にだんだんと} 廃すたれていくだろう。

Machines will gradually go out of date.

37. 騒音そうおんが次第に消えてゆく。

Noise will gradually fade away.

## 第245課: Combination Particles with ところ

While learning about the particle ところ, you'll be introduced to combination particles. We've seen many instances where 2(+) particles can be used together, but we haven't really dealt with instances where one or more used together make a new phrase.

**Combination Particles:** *A particle phrase made up of either more than **one particle** or a **particle(s)** with another part of speech.*

### ところ

The noun 所 means "place". There are four usages of ところ. These usages can be used in many situations. It can be used to show place, moment of time, situation, or the substance of a matter. More specific things that it can show include the following.

- Show a specific space or spot.
- Show a particular place, part, or position.
- Show a point, address, region, etc.
- Shows the current time in phrases like このところ and 今日の所.
- Show a particular time.
- With a meaning of content/outline.
- 早いところ = Promptly

When seen after a verb, tense is very important for correct interpretation. With the **non-past** tense, ところ means "just about to...". When used with the **past** tense of a verb, it shows what you "just did". This can only be used to indicate the time when a certain action has literally just been done. If you want to say that you just recently did something, you should use ～たばかりです.

When used with the **progressive**, it shows that you are now doing a certain action. The "just" may also be emphasized with adverbs such as ちょうど. This is simply an extension of translation of its usage to show time. The tense just shows the time factor.

1. 帰るところだ。  
I'm about to go home.
2. 学校に行くところでした。  
I was about to go to school.
3. 事故を起こすところだったよ。  
I was about to cause an accident.
4. 忘れるところでした。  
I almost forgot.
5. よく晴れるところもあります。  
There are also places where it is quite clear.

6. 雨の降るところもありそうです。  
There also seems to be places where it's raining.
7. 陽が沈むところです。  
The sun is about to set.
8. 会社を出たところです。  
I just left the company.
9. 彼の言ったところが分かりませんでした。  
I didn't understand what *he* said.
10. この国の議会では、B党の占めるところが大きい。  
In this/our country's parliament, B party is the majority.
11. 彼女の理論は、仲間の調査によるところが大きい。  
Her theory mainly relies on the research by his friends.
12. 人は建物を余すところなく建てている。  
People are building buildings exhaustively.
13. もう一歩いっぽといったところですが。  
You're just one more step away, but...
14. 私たちは田舎に新築の家をちょうど買ったところです。  
We have just bought a new house in the countryside.

**Grammar Note:** You can also see *ところ* after speech modals like *～ようとする* *～てしまった*. It works the same way.

## Combination Particles with *ところ*

The meaning of a combination will reflect that of its individual parts put together. However, for the conjunctive particles that are created with *ところ*, this may not be that obvious. These combinations below may also not be used as conjunctive particles and can be more literally interpreted in different situations. Don't let punctuation get the best of you.

	Meaning	Usage
<i>ところへ</i>	Just when	Shows coincidence of events after <i>-ている</i> or <i>-た</i> .
<i>ところが</i>	But/while	Shows unexpected bad outcome.
<i>ところで</i>	Even if (X) were to...	Poses an undesirable hypothetical situation.
<i>ところを</i>	Although usually	Shows something unexpected is happening

**Grammar Notes:**

1. ところ may often be shortened to just ところ.
  2. ところへ may also be ところに.
  3. The particle ところ either shows a sequence or contradiction depending on context. The last usage is synonymous with ところが. These are conjunction usages of ところ.
- 

### Examples

15. 科学の宿題をし始めようとしているところへ、僕の友だちが遊びにきた。  
Just when I was about to start doing my science homework, my friends came to play.
16. 俄にわか雨あめがやんだところへ、台風たいふうが町を襲おそった。  
Just when the shower quit, a typhoon hit the town.
17. 彼女は僕が好きらしいんだよね。ところが、彼女の方は僕が知ってるなんて全く気がついてないよ。  
She (seems) to love me you know. But, she doesn't realize that I know it at all.

**Grammar Note:** As you can see, ところが may also be used as a conjunction at the beginning of a sentence to mean "even so/however/but".

18. 半分したところで、彼はもう済ませたよ。  
I've finished half, but he's already finished!
19. いつもなら6時に起きるところを、今朝は寝坊ねぼうして、学校に遅刻してしまった。  
Although I always wake up at six, I overslept this morning and became late to school.

## 第246課: 以 Adverbial Nouns

This lesson is about a handful of important phrases which start with the character 以. Adverbial nouns can follow other nouns without particles and can easily just be used as adverbs and after the て形.

以外 以内 以降 以後  
以前 以来 以上 以下  
以遠 以往 以東 以北  
以南 以西

### 以外

1. Attached to a nominal phrase meaning "except".

1. 九州と四国以外で地震が発生した。

With exception of Kyushu and Shikoku, earthquakes had occurred everywhere.

2. これ以外に方法はありませんよ。

There is no method other than this.

3. 従業員以外の方の入室は {お断ことわりします・禁きんじられています}。

Entrance except for employees is prohibited.

---

2. 以外の何なにものでもない means "... is entirely...".

4. 愚痴ぐち以外の何ものでもない。

It is complete stupidity.

5. 好奇心こうきしん以外の何ものでもありませんね。

It's entirely curiosity isn't it?

---

3. "Apart from".

6a. 城壁じょうへき以外の地へは踏ふみ込めないなら、大砲たいほうを撃うつがよい。  
(Bookish)

6b. 城壁以外から踏み込めないなら、大砲を撃つ (の) がよい。 (More natural)

If you cannot break in apart from the wall, it would be good to fire the cannon.

## 以内

The opposite of 以外, 以内 means "inside of/within".

7a. 境界線きょうかいせん以内に止まる。

7b. 境界線の中で止まる。 (More natural)

To stop within the boundary line.

8. 二百字以内に纏まとめられるのか。 (Harsh)

Can you summarize it within 200 characters?

9. 6時間以内に着くはずです。

It is supposed to arrive within 6 hours.

## 以降

以降 means "thereafter".

10. 20世紀以降、日本は新技術において進んでいます。

From the 20th century thereafter, Japan has been advancing in new technology.

11. 面会人は午後10時以降本病院に留まることはできません。  
Visitors can not remain in the hospital on and after 10 p.m.

12. 8時以降は店を閉じています。  
We will close the shop after 8 o' clock.

## 以後

Following after nouns and the て形 of a verb, 以後 means "thereafter/since then". 以後 is quite **objective** while 以降 is not. 以後 may also mean "from now on".

13a. 以後、十分気をつけます。

13b. 以後はもっと注意します。  
I'll be more careful from now on.

14. その店舗は7時 {以後は・以降は・から} 開店しています。  
The shop will be open after 7 o' clock.

15. 彼女は先々週せんせんしゅう風邪を引いて、以後ずっと寝込んでいます。  
She caught a cold two weeks ago and has been in bed ever since.

16. それ以後ずっと  
Ever after

17a. 退職以後たいしよくいごは悠々自適ゆうゆうじてき。

17b. 退職後は悠々自適。(More natural)  
After retirement is leisure with dignity.

## 以前

The opposite of 以降, 以前 means "before" or "ago".

18. 以前どこかであなたに出会ったことがあります。  
I believe I've seen you somewhere before.

19. 4人とも以前は旧「Enron」に勤めていた。  
All four formerly worked at Enron.

20. 以前よりずっとよく見えます。  
It looks much better than it was before.

21. 以前ほど魚を食べていない。  
We're eating not as much fish.

22. 俺は以前にもまして勉強しようと決めたのだよ。  
I decided to study harder still more than ever before.

## 以来

以来 means "from/since". In a slightly old fashioned sense, it may mean "henceforth". It is used when the situation is continuing action or state since a certain point in time. Other situations are taken care of by ～てから. Also, this phrase is interchangeable with the even more less frequently used ～てこのかた.

23a. 以来君と旅行するのはご免めんだ。(Original from text; old-fashioned)

23b. 今後、君と旅行するのはご免だ。(More natural)

I decline from traveling with you henceforth.

From 漱石そうせき.

24a. 以来、気をつけたまえ。(Old-fashioned)

24b. 以後、気をつけたまえ。(Slightly old-fashioned; Masculine)

From henceforth, be careful.

25. 彼は大学を出て以来会社に勤めています。

He has been working at the company since he left college.

26a. 子供の頃ころ以来知っている。

26b. 子供の頃から知っている。(More natural)

To know since childhood.

27. 佐伯に関しては、このマンションに越して以来、何の音沙汰もなかったから、徐々に緊張が解け始めているが、拳銃のことは、日を追うに連れて祥子の心に重くのしかかってきていた。

In regards to Sahaku, there hadn't been any news since moving into this apartment, so Sachiko's tensions gradually began to wind down, but as for the handgun, as she pursued the days, it came to press heavily on her heart.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

**Word Note:** 音沙汰 literally has "sound" and "incident" in it. Although 沙汰 in this case is used to mean "update", the word is most likely used here to continue a not so favorable tone in regards to 佐伯. Here are some more phrases with 沙汰.

警察沙汰 Police case

取り沙汰 Idle talk

裁判沙汰 Litigation

表沙汰 Creating publicity

色恋沙汰 Love affair

狂気の沙汰 Madness

## 以上

1. "More than".

28. このグループには12歳以上の子供が含まれている。

Children twelve and over are included in this group.

29. iPadは400ドル以上する。

The iPad costs 400 dollars and over.

30. 3ヶ月以上大阪に滞在たいざいするつもりだ。  
I plan to stay in Osaka for over three months.

31. 予想以上  
Beyond expectation

32. 期待以上でした。  
It exceeded our hopes.

33. これ以上の面倒めんどうには耐たえられない。  
I can't take it anymore.

---

2. Above-mentioned; foregoing; herein-before.

34. 以上の説明でご理解を頂いたきたい。  
I would like to receive some understanding with the above explanation.

35. 以上は方法を説明したものだ。  
The above-mentioned explains how to do it.

---

3. That is the end; the end; this is all.

36. 以上で私の報告は終わります。  
Let me finish my report with this.

37a. 死亡者3千名、行方不明者1万5千名、以上1万8千名。

37b. 死亡者3千名、行方不明者1万5千名、計1万8千名。

Fatalities 3000 people, missing people 15,000 people, and 18,000 people in total.

---

4. Following the 連体形 of a verb, it means "seeing that", "over", or "since".

38. 前回の売り上げ以上の成績を上げる。  
To raise improvements over the previous sales.

39. 昨年以上に売り上げは伸のばせない。  
We can't boost our sales above as they were last year.

40. (私を) 信頼できない以上、犬の世話をさせるべきじゃない。  
Since you don't trust me, you should not let me take care of your dog.

## 以下

以下 means "below(-mentioned)/following".

41. 以下次号。  
To be continued.



42. 結果は以下の通り。

The results are as follows.

43a. 氷点以下となったため、寒さで体温の下がる低体温症で亡くなった方もいました。(Rare)

43b. 氷点下となりましたから、寒さで体温の下がる低体温症で亡くなった方もいました。

Because it has become below freezing, there are those that have died from hypothermia due to loss of body temperature from the cold.

44. 小数点以下を切り捨てる。

To round off the figures below/after the decimal point.

45. 社長以下八名が出席しました。

With the president, eight people in total were present.

## 以遠 & 以往

以遠 means "beyond" and 以往 means "hereafter/formerly".

46. この電車は大阪以遠は各駅停車となります。

This train stops at Osaka and all stations beyond.

47a. 終戦以往百年。(Literary; old-fashioned)

47b. 終戦後百年。(Natural)

47c. 終戦以来百年。(Natural)

100 years hereafter the war.

## 以東、以北、以南、以西

These words, 以東, 以北, 以南, and 以西 mean "east of", "north of", "south of", and "west of" respectively. However, the area is everything below. So, consider that when you use these words.

48. 東京以東

East of Tokyo

49. 東京の東は千葉県です。

To the east of Tokyo is Chiba Prefecture.

50. ミシシッピ川以西はグレート・プレーンズです。

West of the Mississippi River are the Great Plains.

51a. 東京以北には福島第一原発発電所があります。X

51b. 東京の北には福島第一原発発電所があります。○

51c. 福島第一原発発電所は東京の北です。○

North of Tokyo is the Fukushima Number One Nuclear Electric Power Plant.

52a. 仙台以南は東京です。X

52b. 仙台の南に東京はあります。○

52c. 東京は仙台の南です。○  
South of Sendai is Tokyo.

## 第247課: Circumstance: まま, 思いきや, & もと

### まま

"**As is**", with verbs it is primarily seen in the pattern ～たまま(で). It is used to show action "as is" in a certain state without any change in course or situation. However, it is not necessarily the case that the subject in question is still. However, there is a very similarly meaning particle, なり, that we will learn about later which requires the subject be still. So, this is something to keep in mind.

It is not to say that this word is only used with the past tense, although for this meaning it most certainly is. However, in other usages you may see it used with the negative or demonstratives to show how a state is still the same without there being any change, which is of the same vein as above.

Though not really different in meaning, there is also the pattern ままに which is used to show that one leaves something to the course of a situation or to show things are going as thought. In other words, it shows something being left to a natural course of action. You may see this after verbs in the non-past form and even in the passive. You may also see ～がままに, which is very formal and 書き言葉的. A common phrase utilizing this older grammar is 思うがままに. In more modern Japanese, this would become 思いのままに.

---

### Examples

1. 昔のままの風景だよね。  
This scenery is just as it was in the old times, isn't it?
2. そのままにしておいた。  
I left it alone the way it was.
3. 何かを生なまのまま食べたことがありますか。  
Have you ever eaten something raw?
- 4a. 意のままに（思ったように）歌う自由があるよ。  
4b. 意のままに（思ったように）歌っていいんだよ。 (More common)  
I have the freedom to sing at will.
5. 彼は、本能のままに行動しただけです。  
He only acted out of instinct.
6. 窓を開けたままにしておいてください。  
Please leave the window open.
7. このままでは必ず死んでしまう。  
As it is now, we will surely die.

8. 彼女は電気をつけたまま寝ちゃった。(碎けた)  
She slept with the lights on.
9. このままお待ち下さい。(On the phone)  
Please hold the line.
10. 会議がありますから、椅子いすはこのままにしておいてください。  
There's going to be a meeting, so please leave the chairs the way they are.
11. 着きの身着みきのままで逃げること  
Running away with only one's clothes.
12. 自然のままで素敵すてきですわね。(Very feminine)  
It's great keeping it natural.

**漢字 Note:** まま can be written in 漢字 as either 儘・俚.

**Variant/Pronunciation Note:** Depending on the speaker, with region being a significant factor, this may also be seen/pronounced as まんま.

ほしいまま, a very important phrase that uses mama that is written in 漢字 as either 恣, 縦, or 擅, means "selfish".

13. 権勢を恣にする。  
To exert one's power at will.
14. 世界最高の日本語（の）教授としての名声をほしいままにしてるぞ！  
I enjoy the reputation of being the greatest Japanese professor in the world!

## 思いきや

～と思いきや is equivalent to either "despite having thought" or "contrary to expectations". Its literal translation is "just as I thought...". Tense is determined by the final verb.

15. あっさり断られると思いきや、彼女は承諾しょうだくしてくれました。  
Despite having thought that she would just refuse, she consented to it.
16. このレストランは安いと思いきや、会計は5000円以上だったよ。  
Contrary to thinking that this restaurant was cheap, the bill was over five thousand yen!
17. 彼はもう帰ってきたと思いきや、彼にびっくりした。  
Just as I thought he had gone home, I was scared by him.
18. 誰もあの講座に出席しないと思いきや、大勢出席しました。  
Despite having thought that no one would attend that lecture, a lot of people attended.

19. 日本はどこに行っても渋滞じゅうたいで遅くなると思いきや、交通はアメリカのように普通だった。

Despite having thought that you would be made to slow down by congestion wherever you go in Japan, the traffic was normal like America.

**Definition Note:** 思いきや is equivalent to 思っていたところが.

## もと

もと may be written in 漢字 in different ways depending on how it is interpreted. You will see this word again in regards to ～をもとにして.

---

### 下・許

When written as such, it means "under" in a physical sense. It can also refer to be under rules, forces, etc. のもとで and のもとに are both possible, but the former refers to action/movement whereas the latter refers to existence/static situation. Both expressions are rather literary, but the latter is even more so.

20. 行政ぎょうせいの保護の下で税を徴収ちょうしゅうしている。

I'm collecting taxes under the protection of the administration.

21. 法の許に

Under the law

22. 勇将の下に弱卒なし。

There are no weak soldiers under a strong/brave general.

23. 長男は親の下を離れた。

The older brother left from under his parents.

24. 厳しい監視の許に置かれるのは {大変な・酷ひどい} ことでしょうね。

Being placed under harsh surveillance is awful, isn't it?

25. 販売予想を基にして我々は製品の生産を停止することにしました。

On the basis of the sales forecast, we have decided to halt the manufacturing of the product.

26. 太陽のもとで子供たちが遊んでいる。

Kids are playing under the sun.

27. 街灯のもと {に・で} 住民たちが集まっている。

Residents are gathering underneath the street light(s).

---

### 元・旧・故

When written as such, もと means "former/previous". Lastly, it may be used in two important expressions.

28. 元に戻った方がいい。

It's best to return to the previous condition.

29a. 今日、元同僚もとどうりょうと偶然出会いましたよ。

29b. 今日、かつての同僚と偶然会いましたよ。

I happened to meet my former colleague suddenly today.

30. 元の鞘さやに収まる。(Idiom)

To bury the hatchet.

31. 元の木阿弥もくあみ。(Idiom)

Ending up right where you started.

---

## **本・元**

1. Origin, source, root

2. The basis of things, foundation. This usage may also be written in Kanji as 基.

3. The cause. This usage may also be written in Kanji as 因.

4. Funds, capital; cost price.

5. Food stock, ingredients. This usage may also be written in Kanji as 素

6. A counter that counts the number of stumps of plants.

## **Usage Notes:**

1. 本・元 may also be in 元も子もない which means "losing everything".

2. As you may have noticed, usage number 4 is the same as the third usage of 下・許.

---

## **Examples**

32. 失敗は成功の元だ。

Failure is the source of success.

33. 惨事さんじの本もとを辿たどろう。(Literary Spelling)

I will pursue the origin of this horrible accident.

34. 木の元を見つけたか。

Did you find the root of the tree?

35. 風邪は万病の元。

The cold is the source of all sorts of diseases.

36. 酒とタバコが因で健康を {損・害} う。

You lose health due to alcohol and tobacco.

37. 元のかかる商売は高い。

The transaction capital is high.

38. スープの素もとはあるの。  
Do we have the soup stock?

39. 私は柳一本を植えた。  
I planted a single willow tree.

## 第248課: **Result:** ～結果, ～うえで, ～挙句, ～すえに, & ～始末だ

Though these patterns show result, they have their own special nuances. So, even when there is interchangeability, that doesn't mean you are saying 100% the same thing.

### ～結果

～結果 utilizes the word for “result”. It is seen after nouns or the past tense of verbs. What follows is a result and what precedes is a cause. Whether it is in one sentence or two, this is how the pattern works. It is objective and 書き言葉的. It is preceded by verbs of thought/consideration and followed by verbs of result.

1. やるだけはやったのだから、静かに結果を待とう。

I've done just what to do, so I will quietly await the results.

2. 消防車しょうぼうしゃなど13台が消火にあたった**結果**、火はおよそ1時間半後に消し止められましたが、部屋は全焼しました。

As a result of 13 fire trucks fighting the fire, the fire was extinguished after approximately an hour and a half, but the room was completely burned.

From the NHK article 県営けんえい住宅焼け1人死亡1人重体じゅうたい on 2013年7月3日 2時11分.

3. 2日のロンドン外国為替かわせ市場は、ニューヨーク市場や東京市場で株価かぶかが上昇じょうしょうしたことなどを背景はいけいに、世界経済の先行さきゆきに対する懸念けねんがいくぶん和やわらぎ、ドルを買って円を売る動きが次第しだいに強まりました。**その結果**、円相場そうばは一時、先月上旬じょうじゅん以来およそ1か月ぶりに1ドル＝100円台前半ぜんはんまで値下ねさがりました。

The London Foreign Stock Exchange on the second, against the background of stocks having risen in the New York and Tokyo Exchanges, concerns towards the world economy's future have somewhat eased, and the trend of buying dollars and selling yen has gradually strengthened.

As a result, the yen exchange rate for a moment dropped down to the low 1\$ = 100 mark after about a month since the first part of last month.

From the NHK article ロンドン市場 1か月ぶり100円台 on 2013年7月2日 21時36分.

4. この問題は、東日本大震災の復興予算ふっこうよさんが、自治体じちたいなどが管理する基金を通じて、被災地ひさいち以外の事業にも使われているという指摘してきが出ていたもので、政府は、財務省や復興庁など関係省庁しょうちょうを通じて実態調査じったいちょうさを進めてきました。その結果、調査の対象となった各自治体などが管理する16の基金には、およそ1兆1500億円の復興予算が配分され、その大半はすでに執行されていましたが、およそ1400億円がまだ使われていないことが分かりま

した。

As for this problem, with the indication having come out that the East Japan Great Earthquake Disaster Recovery Budget, through funds the municipalities manages are being used even in projects outside the devastated areas, the government has forwarded investigations into the actual circumstances through the ministries and offices concerned such as the Ministry of Office and the Recovery Agency.

As a result, in the 16 funds that each of the municipalities that have become the object of investigation manage, approximately 1 trillion 150 billion yen recovery budget has been allocated, and the great majority of which has already been administered, but it has been found out that approximately 140 billion yen has yet to be used.

From the NHK article 未使用の復興予算 返還要請へんかんようせいへ on 2013年7月2日 12時48分.

## ～うえで

～うえで works grammaticality just like ～結果. It too is seen after nouns or the past tense of a verb. ～うえで shows a willful aspect in taking the next action based on the results of the present/clause or context. This makes it quite different for all of the other patterns in this lesson. It is preceded by verbs of thought/consideration, and then it is followed by verbs of conclusion. Adverbs frequently used in the first clause include よく and 十分に).

5. 十分に事件を勘案かんあんしたうえで返事します。

I will reply after having sufficiently considered the matter.

6. 上司と詳しく相談したうえで、お返事いたします。

I will reply after having consulted in detail with my boss.

7. ASEAN＝東南アジア諸国連合しょこくれんごうと、日本やアメリカ、それに北朝鮮も含む、27の国と国際機関の外相がいしょうなどが参加して、2日にブルネイで開かれたARFは、会議の締めくくりとして議長声明を採択さいたくしました。

議長声明では、ほとんどの参加国の共通認識きょうつうにんしきとして、北朝鮮に核実験かくじっけんの停止ていしなどを求めた過去の国連安保理あんぱり決議と、北朝鮮による既存きそんの核計画の放棄ほうきなどを盛もり込こんだ、6か国協議の共同声明の義務を果はたすよう、北朝鮮に求めています。

そのうえで、「参加国のほとんどは朝鮮半島の非核化に向けた努力を支持する」としています。

ARF, which was opened in Brunei on the second with foreign ministers from 27 international organizations including ASEAN (Association of Southeast Asian Nations), Japan, America, as well as North Korea participating, adopted the chairman's proclamation as the meeting's close. With the chairman's proclamation, as almost all of the participating nations' common understanding, it is calling for North Korea to carry out its duties of the six nation conference joint statement, including things such as U.N Security Council Resolution of the past which sought the halt of nuclear tests in North Korea and the abandonment of current nuclear plans by North Korea.

Moreover, it is asserting that "almost all of the participating nations support

the efforts towards the denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula".  
From the NHK Article A R F 議長声明 朝鮮半島の非核化支持ひかくかしじ on  
2013年7月3日 0時9分.

#### 8. 新潟県にいがたけん知事「地元軽視けいしだ」

新潟県の泉田知事いずみだちじは「事前に連絡はなく、こんな地元軽視はない」と強い不快感ふかいかんを示しました。

そのうえで、「東京電力は福島第一原発の事故の際のTV会議の状況をすべて公開していないなど、検証けんしょうが不十分で事故の責任せきにんもとっていない。運転再開について議論を行う段階ではない」と東京電力の姿勢を改めて批判しました。

国も理解得る努力を茂木もてぎ経済産業大臣けいざいさんぎょうだいじんは、訪問中ほうもんちゅうのベトナムで「申請しんせいが出された段階で原子力規制委員会きせいいいんかいには厳正げんせいで速すみやかな審査しんさを行っていただきたい。そのうえで安全性が確認されたら東京電力任せではなくて国としても前面 ぜんめんに出て自治体などの理解を得るよう努力どりょくをしていきたい」と述べました。

Niigata Prefecture Governor "It's local neglect"

Niigata Prefecture Governor Izumida demonstrated strong displeasure saying that "there isn't local neglect like this without contact beforehand". Moreover, he again criticized the position of Tokyo Electric saying, "Tokyo Electric aren't even taking responsibility for the accident, not completely making public the conditions of the TV meeting at the time of the Fukushima No. 1 Reactor accident and with the inspections being insufficient. This is not the stage to debates about the restart of operations".

#### The Nation Too to Strive for Receiving Understanding

Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry Moteji, stated while in Vietnam "I would like for a strict and speedy hearing in the Nuclear Energy Regulations Committee on the phase of having sent an application. Moreover, once safety is confirmed, not being left up to Tokyo Electric, but as a nation, I want us to come to the front and strive to seek the understanding of the municipalities.

From the NHK article 柏崎刈羽原発かしわざきかりわけんぱつ 安全審査の申請決定 on 2013年7月2日 15時12分.

9. 菅官房長官すがかんぼうちょうかんは、東京都内で講演こうえんし、参議院選挙さんぎいんせんきょでは自民・公明両党こうめいりょうとうで非改選ひかいせんも含め過半数を確保することが最低限の目標だとしたうえで、経済の再生を最優先さいゆうせんに掲かかげて選挙戦に臨みたいという考えを示しました。

そのうえで、菅官房長官は、参議院選挙で訴うったえる政策せいさくについて、「憲法けんぽう改正は、自民党の党是であり今回の選挙戦でも訴えることになる。しかし、今の状況での優先順位じゅんいは、国民やいろいろな人から話を聞いても、経済だ」と述べ、経済の再生を最優先に掲げて選挙戦に臨みたいという考えを示しました。

Chief Cabinet Secretary Suga held a lecture in Tokyo and suggested that they look forward to the election battle carrying the economy's recover as their top priority, with both the Liberal Democratic Party and the Justice



Party securing the majority including those not up for reelection in the House of Councilors election as a minimal goal.

Moreover, Chief Cabinet Secretary Suga, in regards to the policies they're calling for in the election stated, "As for Constitution revision, it is the LDP's party platform, and we are to call for it in this election battle as well.

However, our current priority is on the economy no matter what we hear from citizens or others", suggesting that carrying the economy's recovery is their top priority.

From the NHK article 菅氏「過半数目標 経済前面に」 on 2013年7月2日 15時12分.

## ～挙句

挙句 あげく, normally negative, is used with a noun or the past tense of a verb to show that one spends a lot of effort on something but something else comes out of it with the outcome often being a last resort. 挙句 is close to "after a great deal of" and is often used with the adverb 散々さんざん meaning "repeatedly". Verbs that precede it entail thought/consideration, but they are mainly verbs with negative outcomes such as 悩む, 迷う, 議論する, 文句もんくをいう, etc. Passive and causative expressions are also common.

Expressions found in the latter clause involve result just like ～結果. However, again, it is usually negative, and even if the result isn't totally bad, it definitely gives the sense that it's not worth much. With that said, you are not likely to see it much in the news as the news is typically written in an objective fashion.

**Orthography Note:** 挙（げ）句 can also be spelled as 揚（げ）句.

---

### Examples

10. 散々文句を言った挙句、出たばかりだよ。

After a great deal of repeatedly arguing, she just left!

11. 三人が酔っ払った挙句の果てに高圧線こうあつせんに襲おそいかけて感電死かんでんしたという。

It's said that after three men had gotten drunk that they crashed into a high-voltage line and were electrocuted to death.

12. 色々いろいろ勉強の揚句、地元の大学に入学することにしました。

After a great deal of various studies, I decided to enter a local college (although I tried for more).

13. 頑張った挙句の果てに諦あきらめただけさ。(Casual)

After trying my best, I just gave up.

## ～すえに

すえ is noun that literally refers to the “end/tip”. You see it in temporal phrases such as 7月の末. However, it also shares something in common with the speech modals of this lesson. Used in the same fashion as them, it shows a temporal conclusion in which “after a certain course of events has run its way, in the end it becomes as such”.

14. 夜を徹てっして議論した {△ 結果・○ 挙句・Xうえで・○すえに}、白紙はくしに戻もどしてやり直すことになった。

After having debated all night, it became decided that we should redo and go back to the drawing board.

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント by 市川保子.

From this sentence it resembles 挙句, but it is actually more objective. It also doesn't have to seem negative. What they do share, though, is that they demonstrate a long trial of sorts.

15. 「コマキさん、楽器は何か演奏できる」

固い布団に横たわりながら、モウリさんが聞いた。長く逃げてきたすえ、よく知らない西の町の海辺に、部屋を借りているのだった。モウリさんは町のはずれにあるゴムの工場に勤めていた。三日に一回ある夜勤から帰った日だったかもしれない。窓の外が明るみはじめていた。

"Komaki, can you play any instrument?", Mouri asked as she lay on the hard futon. After having ran away a long ways, we were renting a room on the shore in a town to the west we didn't quite know. Mouri was working at a rubber factory at the edge of the town. It might have been the day she returned from a certain night shift once every three days. The outside from the window was beginning to brighten up.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

16. あの国は長年ながねんの紛争ふんそうを経へた {○ 結果・△ 挙句・Xうえで・○すえに}、ようやく反対デモもなく自主選挙じしゅせんきょを行なうことができた。

That nation after having gone through years of conflict was able to finally carry out voluntary elections without even any opposition demonstrations.

---

### Finally: やっと, ようやく, ついに, Etc.

There are many adverbs that are translated as "finally". If there are so many words, there must be differences between them. The sentence above shows a very typical instance of ようやく, but the sentence would sound unnatural to various degrees if you were to replace it with another synonymous phrase.

**やっと:** After one's effort over a long period of time, something finally/narrowly realizes. やっと is a positive and shows considerable satisfaction. Whether it is a place, time, or money, after a narrow situation, there is a final realization/conclusion. If the speaker has gone through much trial/struggle in achieving a result that is positive yet contrary to original expectation, やっと **can't** be used.

17. やっと安心して眠れる。

I'm finally able to sleep with ease.

18. やっとこさ全部片づいたよ。

I've finally finished it all.

**Slang Note:** In slang it can be seen as やっとこさ.

ついに・遂に: At the final stage of something, X either realizes or it doesn't. The situation one has been in has lasted a long time (like やっと), and there is the potential that what you wanted ends up not happening at all (not like やっと). ついに can rather coldly state non-realization. If it is a positive outcome, it may have a light sense of happiness or relief. However, although やっと doesn't foster an indifferent attitude, it usually implies that the speaker wished the good outcome would have come earlier.

19. 警察はついに犯人を逮捕した。

The police finally arrested the criminal.

ようやく・漸く: やっと and ついに capture the moment of realization, but ようやく places stress on the process. ようやく shows a positive, objective evaluation of planned change, and it expressed an effort that one has waited on. This is in relation to **time** and not something like money or physical labor. ようやく is inappropriate in showing one's 本音 due to its objectivity.

20. ようやく分かった気がする。

I think I finally understand.

21. ようやく秋が来た。

Fall has finally come.

22. 寮での集団生活にようやく慣れました。

I have finally gotten used to group living in the dormitory.

23. 私は漸くほっとした心もちになって、巻煙草まきたばこに火をつけながら、始めて懶ものうい睞まぶたをあげて、前の席に腰を下していた小娘の顔を一瞥いちべつした。I finally became relieved, and while I lit my cigar, I first started to raise my languid eyes and glanced at the little girl's face, who was sitting in the seat in front of me.

From 蜜柑 by 芥川龍之介.

**Form Note:** It can be seen as ようよう・漸う in older language. ようやっと, the fusion of やっと and ようやく, also exists and is essentially the same as やっと with the time nuance of ようやく.

とうとう・到頭: This is similar to ようやく in that it places stress on the process rather than instant of realization. It is either used in positive or negative situations to show that after repeated efforts and over the course of a long time, an expected change either does or doesn't happen. This is subjective rather than objective. If you were to use it or ついに instead of やっと in something like あっ、やっと電車が来た!, your statement would be quite hyperbolic.

24. 彼らはとうとう行っちゃったよ。

They finally left.

25. すると間もなく凄すさまじい音をはためかせて、汽車が隧道トンネルへなだれこむと同時に、小娘の開けようとした硝子戸がらすどは、とうとうぱたりと下へ落ちた。

Then, in no time at all, the girl caused a fierce noise to flutter about, and at the same time the train plunged into the tunnel, the glass door that she had tried to open finally fell and plopped down below.

From 蜜柑 by 芥川龍之介.

辛うじて: This is a literary word that shows an extremely close-call situation in one's favor. So, it is often translated as "barely", but it is much like やっと. But, it doesn't have the same requirement that it have the prerequisite of something going as planned. だろうじて can easily be used to refer to future event. If it is an nonfactual probability, it can't be replaced with やっと or ようやく. It can be if it is a factual probability, but in this case ついに and とうとう aren't good because they aren't used with future expressions.

26. 辛うじて生きてろ！

Narrowly live!

27. 辛うじて手に入った。

I narrowly got a hold of it.

いよいよ・愈(々)・弥弥: This can be very similar to the above when it shows that after some time, an event reaches an important situation. In this sense it is very similar to ついに. It is not emotionally cold like ついに. However, it is more objective than the other options like やっと. It also has other meanings such as "more and more" in which it implies increase in momentum.

28. あの皺しわだらけの頬は愈いよいよ赤くなって、時々鼻洟はなをすすりこむ音が、小さな息の切れる声と一しょに、せわしなく耳へはいつて来る。

Her wrinkle covered cheeks at last became red, and the occasional sound of her sniffing her nose along with the sound of her breath running out restlessly entered my ears.

From 蜜柑 by 芥川龍之介.

## ～始末だ

There are four simple meanings of 始末. The first is to mean "beginning and end". It may mean "end result" in a negative fashion. As a noun or a verb with する, it means "clean up/get rid of". Lastly, it can mean "thrifty" as a noun or as a verb with する.

29. 事の始末を語った。

He gave the story of it (an event) from beginning to end.

30. 彼はしまいに、逃げ出す始末だった。

He, in the end, had to run away (from there).

31. 不法滞在して国外追放になる始末だ。  
Illegal overstaying in a country results in deportation.

32. 酔ようと始末に終えない。  
Obstreperous.

33. 始末屋  
A thrifty person

## 第249課: Compare & Contrast: ～に比べて, ～に引き換え, ～に反して, ～にもまして, & ～ないまでも

The patterns in this lesson deal with compare and contrast. Although not near as similar to each other as topics in other lessons, you still need to pay attention to detail so that you don't confuse them with each other.

### ～に比べて

Also ～と比べて, ～に比べると, ～に比べ, ～と比べ, and ～と比べると, ～に比べて means "compared to". It is a simple comparison. Without ～て, of course, the pattern becomes more literary.

1. 外は暑いが、それに比べて中は寒い。  
It's hot outside, but, moreover, in contrast, it's cold inside.
2. この本は昨日読んだのと比べると全くつまらない。  
This book compared to the one I read yesterday is completely boring.
3. 彼は妹と比べて若く見えました。  
He looked younger beside his younger sister.
4. 今年は去年に比べ、雪の量りょうが多い。  
In contrast to last year, there has been more snowfall this year.
5. 男子学生と女子学生の比率は、2対1だ。  
The ratio of male and female students is 2 to 1.

**Word Note:** The last example is shown to give other similar words with the character 比.

### ～に引き換え

～に引き換え is used to show a sharp contrast in which something is greatly better or worse than something else. This can only go after nominal phrases, so you have to nominalize verbs and adjectives if you want to use them together.

6. 健太の住んでいるマンションは新しくて、広い。それに引き換え、僕のところは古くて狭いし、駅からも遠いよ。  
The apartment that Kenta is living at is new and wide. By contrast, my place is old, small, and also far from the train station.

7. 同じ年の人に引き換え、彼はとても頭がよくて、たくさんの素晴らしい偉業いぎょうを成し遂とげました。

In sharp contrast to people of his same age, he is very smart and has made a lot of wonderful achievements.

8. 惑星わくせいの大きさに引き換え、冥王星めいおうせいはとても小さい。

In sharp contrast to the size of a planet, Pluto is very small.

## ～に反して

反する means "contrary" and に反して means "contrary to/against".

9. 予想よそうに反して成功するのはいつもいいことでしょう。

Succeeding against one's expectations is always a good thing isn't it?

10. 神の意に反して人間は互たがいに殺害している。

Against the will of God, humans are slaying each other.

11. 我々の期待に反していた。

It was contrast to our expectations.

12. 国防長官こくぼうちょうかんは事実に反する報告をしました。

The Secretary of Defense made a report contradictory to the facts.

## ～にもまして

まして is an adverbial phrase that shows something is beyond the degree of the norm, past, other things, or the present situation. If the sentence is negative, of course, you say the opposite. ～にもまして takes this back to a verbal phrase with the same purpose.

You may also see 況いわんや, which is a contraction of the verb 言う, the auxiliary verb ～む, and や, which equate to something on the lines of いうまでもなく. This phrase is typically seen in negative sentences to mean "let alone".

---

## Examples

12. あいつは日本語を読むことすらできない。まして書くのと話すなどできるものではない。

He can't even read Japanese. Much less write it or speak it.

13. 彼女は小走りもろくにできない。況まして走れるわけがない。

She can hardly jog, much less being able to run.

14. 今年は去年にもまして暑さが厳しい。

The heat is far more severe than even last year.

15. 彼はほとんど目が見えない。ましてや、読めるわけがないよ。

He can't really see, much less being able to read.

16. 敵てきでも困っていたら助けます。ましてや味方みかたなら当然です。  
I would help an enemy if her were to be in distress, much more a friend.
17. いわんや子供には無理だね。  
It's useless much less with kids.
18. 最近は以前にもまして物覚えが悪くなった。  
Recently, my memory has gotten worse than it was even before.

### ～ないまでも

This shows that something has not reaching past a certain level, but it is a little below.

19. 毎週とはいわないまでも、せめて月に1回は映画館に行きたい。  
Not that it'd have to be every week, but I'd like to at least go to the movies once a month.
20. 快晴かいせいとはいかないまでも、雨は降らないでほしい。  
Not that I won't go if it doesn't turn out to be clear weather, but I'd like it to not rain.

## 第250課: As (change): ～につれて, ～に従って, ～に伴って, ～とともに, ～に応じて, & ～に応じて

～につれて, ～に従って, ～に伴って, and ～とともに all have meanings of showing the transition/change of one situation as another transition/change is under way. We will also see how ～に応じて・応えて relate to them.

### ～につれて

～につれて is either after a noun or a verb in the 連体形 to express "as one thing changes, another thing changes as well". These changes are simultaneous. Although it can be after nouns or verbs, it is after verbs more often. ～につれて is often used in situations where there is a proportional relationship with the two events in the respective clauses.

As such, the first clause acts as the trigger, proportionately raising the degree of the change/transition of the latter clause. Common translations include "as", "together with", and "in accordance to/with".

**Variant Note:** It can be seen in more formal/written language as ～につれ.

---

### Examples

1. 歌は世につれ世は歌につれ。  
Song changes by generation, and generations change by song.

2. 昭和から平成へと時代が変わるにつれて軍歌ぐんかは歌われなくなりました。

With the changing of periods from the Showa to the Heisei, military songs became unsung.

3. 時間が経つにつれて忘れっぽくなる。

As time passes, I become forgetful.

4. 都心化（が進む）につれて自分の地域への関心が薄うすれる。

As urbanization progresses, the concern towards one's region fades.

5. 夜が更ふけるにつれて嵐あらしは激しくなった。

The storm became fierce as the night grew late.

6. 季節の変化につれて気温が変わる。

The temperatures change in accordance to the seasons.

7. 冬になるにつれて、山が白くなってくる。

The mountains become white as winter depends.

8. イナゴは稲に付く害虫なので駆除しなくてはなりません。昔の人はそこからイナゴを食べることを思いつきました。当時は、食べることを前提に捕まえていたので、殺虫剤は使っていませんでした。しかし戦後、農薬が普及し、それにつれてイナゴは激減してしまいました。現在では、殺虫剤を使ったイナゴの駆除も行われていますが、安全な無農薬栽培やオーガニック栽培をしている農家では一匹ずつ捕まえているそうです。大変な作業ですね。

Locusts are harmful insects which stick to rice plants and have to be exterminated. People in the past thought of eating locusts from this. At the time, they wouldn't use pesticides with eating them as a premise. However, after the war, agrochemicals spread, and with this locusts were decreased in number. Presently, there is extermination involving pesticides, but at farms which use safe non-agriculture chemical and organic cultivation, locusts are caught by hand one by one. That's definitely a tough job.

## ～に従って

～に従って can be used in a hierarchical sense to mean "according to". As should be expected, ～に従い is more formal and indicative of the written language. Both に従っての and 従った are appropriate attribute forms.

9. 命令に従って、行動しろ。

Act according to the command.

10. 私の合図に従って行動してください。

Please act in according to my signals.

It may also be used like ～につれて. In the first usage above, it attaches to nouns. As for this usage, it attaches primarily to verbs. It, however, simply states that the two actions described in the respective clauses are happening in parallel.



11. 南に行くに従い、気温がどんどん高くなる。(Somewhat literary)

The temperature gets higher as you go south.

12. 人口が増えるにしたがって、住宅問題が起こってくる。

As the population increases, housing problems will come to occur.

13. 人口が増えるにしたがって、犯罪が多発する。

As the population increases, crime will frequently occur.

The contrast in nuance between ～につれて and ～にしたがって can definitely be seen in the following example.

14. スタジアムで場内の歓声が高まる {～につれて・～にしたがって}。実況アナウンサーの声も大きくなっていった。

As the cheers in the stadium intensified, the commentator's voice got ever louder.

With ～につれて, the suspense is captured with the first clause being the trigger for the events of the second. With ～にしたがって, the sentence doesn't become ungrammatical, but it loses the emotive drive and merely states that the two events described in the respective clauses are happening in parallel.

## ～に伴って

伴う means "to accompany" and ～に伴って means "associated/accompanied with" or "as". Just like ～につれて, it may show that something is happening together with a change/transition of a certain situation. There is a temporal context of "taking A as the opportunity, therefore...B". It is also often the case that it infers that the thing in the second clause continues.

What precedes it is either a noun or verb. In the case of a verb, unlike the other options, the particle の may be optionally used after the verb for nominalization. To be clear, this is not required and is not done in the first place for the other options. Lastly, ～に伴って is more literary.

**Variant Note:** It may also be seen in writing as ～に伴い.

15. 汚染おせんに伴う問題について話しましょう。

Let's talk about the problems accompanied with pollution.

16. 人口の増加に伴って、たくさんの住宅が建てられる。

Many houses are constructed in association to the increase in population.

**Particle Note:** 伴う is used with を when used transitively.

## ～とともに

～とともに also behaves like ～につれて to show that something happens together with a change/transition of a certain situation. However, unlike ～に

つれて, the entire sentence doesn't necessarily have to show a state of progress. In other cases it can have meanings equivalent to 同時に and 一緒に. As for its usage similar to ～につれて, it's also the case that the words it follows must show change in situation. It cannot be words pertaining to action, which ～につれ and ～にしたがって can be.

17. 人口の増加とともに、犯罪が多発する。

Along with the increase in population, crimes will frequently occur.

18. 子供が卒業するとともに、父母会ふばかいも解散かいさんしました。

The parents' association also dissolved at the same time the kids graduated.

19. 皆さんとともに快適かいてきな道づくりを進めます。

With everyone we will go forward with a pleasant road construction.

**漢字 Note:** This pattern may also be written in 漢字 as ～と共に.

## ～に応じて

～に応じて means "accordingly" or "as to". The first meaning is important in this lesson as it ties with the other patterns. When it is used with a verb that shows change, it describes the corresponding/dealing with a certain change. In this instance, it is possible to switch it out with ～につれて, ～にしたがって, ～にともなって, and ～とともに.

In its other meaning, it is equivalent to ～に応じて (as to/to satisfy). Although this, too, sounds like it is of the vein of the other phrases, it's not. Although in such situations it may seem that ～に従って is possible, it would be considerably more negative.

20a. 住民の要求に応じて、説明会を開くことになりました。○

20b. 住民の要求に従って、説明会を開くことになりました。△

20c. 住民の要求 {にともなって・とともに}、説明会を開くことになりました。？

20d. 住民の要求につれて、説明会を開くことになりました。X

In meeting the wants of the citizens, it has been decided that we open an information seminar.

It has the attribute forms ～に応じての and ～に応じた. When に応じて comes before a noun, の is necessary after に応じて. Or, you can use に応じた. The 一段 conjugating verb 応じる either means "reply" or "to comply".

21. 質問に応じて、彼女は問題の解答を詳しく説明しました。

As to answer the question, she explained the answer to the problem well.

22. 命令に応じた服従。

Obedience in accordance to command.

23. 料金が距離きょりと時間に応じて決まります。

The fee is determined according to distance and time.

24. 「うん」と応じる。

To respond with a "yes".

25. 相手の依頼いらいに応じましたか。

Have you responded to your partner's request?

26. 車の速さに応じてガソリンの消費量が変わる。

Fuel use will change depending upon the car's speed.

## ～に应运て

The 一段 verb 应运る may be used to mean "to come through/satisfy/answer" or "to tell/go to one's heart". The latter usage shows some sort of burden.

27. 要求に应运たえて、社員の給料が上がりました。

To meet demand, the employee's salaries went up.

28. 国民に应运て、法律は廃止はいしされました。

The law was repealed in response to the citizens.

29. 期待に应运る。

To come through with expectations.

30. 深酒ふかざけは身体に应运るのです。

Hard drinking takes its toll on the body.

31. その当時供給は需要に {应运て・満たして} いなかった。

In those days, the supply didn't meet the demand.